

# The Rites of Hajj, Practical Treatise and Rules

## Author(s):

Ayatullah Naser Makarem Shirazi [3]

This book discusses the important of Hajj, one of the obligatory pillars in Islam. The secrets, conditions of necessity, different types of Hajj as well as conditions of Hajj al-Tamattu' are thoroughly discussed along with its rules and regulations.

## Translator(s):

Bahador Shirazian [4]

## Category:

Hajj (Pilgrimage) [5]

## Featured Category:

Muslim Practices [6]

## Importance of Hajj in Islam

Hajj is one of most important pillars of Islam and it is one of greatest religious duties.

Holy Qur'an says in a short and meaningful sentence:

وَلِلَّهِ عَلَى النَّاسِ حِجُّ الْبَيْتِ مَنِ اسْتَطَاعَ إِلَيْهِ سَبِيلًا.

***It is on people for the sake of Allah to perform Hajj of his house, anyone who is able to undertake the journey to him. (2: 196)***

And it says below this verse:

وَمَنْ كَفَرَ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنِ الْعَالَمِينَ

***And anyone who disbelieves (and renounces Hajj, has impaired himself), Allah is not in need of any of his created ones in the worlds.”(3:97)***

The sentence “It is on people for the sake of Allah ...” adding the definition of “disbelieves” (infidelity) for people who renounce the obligatory Hajj. This clearly shows its extraordinary importance in Islam.

It is interesting that in the interpretation of the holy verse:

وَمَنْ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ أَعْمَى فَهُوَ فِي الْآخِرَةِ أَعْمَى وَأَضَلُّ سَبِيلًا.

***And anyone who had been blind (from seeing Allah) in this world, will be blind in hereafter and more deviant from the path”. (17:72)***

It has been quoted from Imam Sadiq (a.s.) that one of the meanings of the verse is that a person who postpones his obligatory Hajj continuously until his death arrives (he will be blind in hereafter).<sup>1</sup>

It has been mentioned in another Hadith: “Anyone who renounces his obligatory Hajj without any excuse will be re-awakened as Jew or Christian”

We read in a Hadith from Imam Sadiq (a.s.): “Persons who perform Hajj and Umrah are guests of Allah. He will grant them their wishes and any prayer that they recite will be accepted. And if they pray for intercession about a person it will be accepted ... and if they die in this way Allah will forgive all of their sins”.

Also, we read in another Hadith that:

إِنَّ الْحَجَّ الْمَبْرُورَ لَا يَعْدِلُهُ شَيْءٌ وَلَا جَزَاءَ لَهُ إِلَّا الْجَنَّةَ.

*Nothing compares with the accepted Hajj and it has no reward other than heaven!”*

وَ أَنَّ الْحَاجَّ يَكُونُ كَيَوْمِ وُلِدَتْهُ أُمُّهُ.

*A Person who performs Hajj purifies himself from sins like the day that he was born”.*

And this is the greatest gift, and the best honor and the highest reward.

---

1. This Hadith and future ones have been quoted by the late Mohaghegh Yazdi in “al-Urwat al-Wusqa” in the book of Hajj and the late Sheikh Hurr Ameli and other great scholars in the book “Wasael al-Shi’aa” and other famous Hadith books.

## Secrets of the Hajj

Undoubtedly, there are great rewards as mentioned above. However there are also harsh penalties that have been mentioned, in holy Qur’an and hadeeth, for renouncing the Hajj. This is because of the secrets and important philosophies that this great Islamic worship has.

The holy Qur’an says in a short and meaningful sentence about Hajj that:

لِيَشْهَدُوا مَنَافِعَ لَهُمْ

***(Encourage people to perform Hajj) That they may witness advantages for them (22:28)***

These benefits are so much and have been pointed to them in hadith of Ma’soomin (infallibles) (a.s.), for instance:

**1** Culturing the souls, purifying of ethics and strengthening the bases of virtue and purity. The sentence which had been mentioned in above Ahadith, stating that an accepted Hajj causes a person to exit his sins like the day that he was born, is a clear proof for influence of Hajj on purity of heart and happiness of the souls and removing the effects of sins of a lifetime. This great moral and intellectual journey benefits the pilgrims of Bait Allah al-Haraam (sacred house of Allah).

One may note carefully to the secrets of acts and rites that they perform, in order that each step that they go through is a step to Allah this great and meaningful worship becomes like a “rebirth” for them.

Those who perform this great spiritual worship by noticing to its secrets and with extreme purity of intention feel its deep effects on their soul until the end of life, and whenever they remember the memories of this spiritual journey and its full of spirituality, happiness and purity they feel a new and fresh soul is being blown in them (this is the teaching and moral effect of Hajj).

**2** “Political effects” which are available beside the teaching effects of Hajj are very Important; because Hajj, if performed as Islam has ordered and Prophet Abraham has invited people of the world to do, causes to increase the honor of Muslims and strengthen the basis of religion and causes the unity of the word and power and respect against enemies and announcing the avoidance of polytheists of the world.

This great divine assembly which takes place beside the house of Allah gives the best opportunity to Muslims for reviving their powers, and neutralizing the plans of enemies of Islam.

But unfortunately, some of Muslims are unaware of political philosophy of Hajj, as they do not reach to the depth of its moral philosophy. They suffice only to the appearances and are unaware of the soul of this great worship. A politician once commented: “Woe betide Muslims if they do not understand the meaning of Hajj, and woe betide enemies of Islam if Muslims understand the meaning of Hajj!”

**3** “Scientific and cultural effects” are other important effects of Hajj which had been pointed to us in hadith of infallibles (a.s.), Effects and signs of prophet of Islam (s.a.) and infallible Imams (a.s.) can be seen in any place of Mecca and Medina and stations of Hajj.

The presence of great Islamic scientists from all countries, consisting of great religious scholars, masters of other fields, orators and writers, amongst those who are attending Hajj every year, give an opportunity to exchange information and knowledge in all religious and scientific fields to all Muslims of the world. Moreover a good amount of information about the conditions of Muslims can be achieved. This information can help in alleviating the conditions of Muslims.

**4** “Economical philosophy” has been also considered in Islamic books as one of secrets and purposes of Hajj. Some people may be wondering on how Hajj can be related to economical matters?

However we notice that today, the most important problem of most Muslims is their economical dependence to enemies of Islam, and if it is possible to establish meetings and seminars by economists of the world of Islam, to free Muslims from domination of others in this issue, the importance of this matter becomes clear.<sup>1</sup>

Hajj has important secrets as above, which can be further explained in separate topics and taught to all Muslims especially the younger generation.

---

1. These four philosophies have been quoted in a Hadith from Imam Ali ibn Mousa al-Reza (a.s.) (Wasael al-Shi'aa, vol. 8, page 7, Hadith 15)

# Conditions of Necessity of Hajj

## Article 1

Hajj is obligated to be performed, by a Muslim, once in a lifetime. One must be;

1- An adult

2- Sane

3- Having provisions for the journey e.g. Transportation, accommodation food cost

4- Having the permission to travel and not having any difficulty in the way, like fear of life, assets or honor.

5- Having physical abilities for performing the acts of Hajj.

6- Having enough time for reaching Mecca and performing the acts.

7 Having enough savings to support the cost of living of family members left behind and any other person under the pilgrim's charge, when the pilgrim goes for Hajj.

8- Having a job or business that the pilgrim can resume after returning from Hajj. Pilgrim should be able to be financially able for day to day expenses for himself and those who are under his support e.g. family

## Article 2

Hajj is obligatory for a person when he has enough money for buying a house. However if the needs are not being sufficed without owning a house; but if the person can live in a rental house or Waqf (inalienable religious endowment) house, then the person can perform Hajj by having that kind of house.

## Article 3

Whenever a person does not have enough money for going to Mecca, but another person gives him the money for performing Hajj and also this person pays the costs of his family during this pilgrimage, then Hajj is obligatory for him. Even he has debts or does not have a job or business for paying the costs of living.

Accepting such a gift is obligatory; unless that person puts him under severe moral obligation by accepting this gift or there is a loss or intolerable hardness in accepting that gift.

## **Article 4**

A Person who has been employed for serving in the journey of Hajj as the religious leader or manager or deputy of caravan or member of the staff or physician and nurse or disciplinary agent or bank authority or any other occupation, and has performed Hajj in this way, it is considered as an obligatory Hajj, on one condition that the costs of living of the family or dependants has been provided during the journey; but accepting such an employment is not obligatory.

## **Article 5**

A person who can perform Hajj by borrowing money is not able to perform Hajj, even if he can pay later his whole debt at once or by installments, unless he has assets that can pay his debt from them easily.

## **Article 6**

It is not permitted to perform Hajj by Haraam (illegally acquired) money or the money from which Khums has not been paid. If the money for Ihram clothing and Tawaf and Sa'y or payment for sacrifice or the cost of camp and floor covering that the pilgrim stays on t in Arafat and Mena is Haraam, then his Hajj is invalidated as a precaution.

## **Article 7**

Whenever a person registers for Hajj and thereafter dies or his physical ability is greatly reduced and he is not able to perform the Hajj any more, and in condition of his death, the receipt of registration belongs to his heirs, on the condition that he had not been able to perform Hajj in a way other than registration.

## **Article 8**

The money that is given for registration has no Khums, if it is from the income of the same year.

# **Mustahab Hajj**

## **Article 9**

It is Mustahab (recommended) for persons who are not able to perform Hajj or do not have other conditions or have performed obligatory Hajj, to perform Hajj and it is Mustahab to perform it every year. But if due to extreme congestion of Hajjis there is a interruption for people who have not performed their

obligatory Hajj yet, then it is preferred not to perform Mustahab Hajj.

It is also preferred to give turns to persons who have not performed obligatory Hajj and want to perform for the first time; but if (assumably) the house of Allah has enough places remaining for Hajjis for one year then it is obligatory for the religious governor to send groups of people for performing Hajj even if they have already performed their obligatory Hajj.

## **Article 10**

Permission of the husband is not necessary for the wife to perform obligatory Hajj, but the permission is necessary when wife wants to perform Mustahab Hajj. Also if Mustahab Hajj is bringing hardship and hurt to father or mother then there is a problem.

# **Hajj by Proxy**

## **Article 11**

It is permitted to deputize a person for performing obligatory or Mustahab Hajj on behalf of a dead person, but it is only permitted in Mustahab Hajj for a person who is alive.

However for those who have been able to perform Hajj and had not performed so because of carelessness and now that they are not able to perform Hajj according to their oldness, illness or inability, in this condition it is obligatory for them to take a proxy; but if when a person has financial ability in the time that has no more physical ability or the way is not open for him, then Hajj is not obligatory for him, also taking a proxy is not obligatory, even during lifetime or after the death.

## **Article 12**

A woman could be a proxy on behalf of a man and vice versa, and each of them should observe their own duties in this kind of Hajj; if the proxy is a woman then she should perform duties that is ascribed for women and if the proxy is a man then he should perform duties ascribed for men, but it is better for women to be proxies of women and for men to be proxies of men.

## **Article 13**

It is not permitted for a person, on whom Hajj is obligatory for him/her to be someone else's proxy; but if this person performs this act, the Hajj is correct for other person who has deputized him/her although the

person has performed a sin. A person who is not able by himself/herself can be someone's proxy, but does not gain the ability by reaching Mecca in this way.

## **Article 14**

Whenever a person is deputized for performing Hajj and the year of pilgrimage has not been specified then he/she should perform Hajj in the first year.

## **Article 15**

It is permitted to take a proxy for performing obligatory Hajj in behalf of a dead person from "Miqat" and the money of this act subtracted from the main inheritance. However if the heir agrees then it is permitted to take a proxy for performing Hajj from the city (the city which dead person had lived in) but the margin of costs between Hajj from Miqat and city can only be paid by the adult heirs.

## **Article 16**

The "Proxy" should know the issues and rituals of Hajj, but it is not necessary that he/she has performed Hajj before. People such as servants of a caravan or alike who know from the beginning that they cannot meet Mash'ar voluntarily cannot accept to be a proxy.

# **Hajj of Nazr (an offering; to make a spiritual vow)**

## **Article 17**

Whenever a sane and adult person performs Nazr (make a spiritual vow) purposely and by free will for performing Hajj, then Hajj is obligatory for that person. But the Nazr of a wife, if it has a contradiction with her rights, is not permitted without the permission of her husband, and if it has no such contradiction then it is in order.

## **Article 18**

Whenever a person does Nazr for performing Hajj and does not specify a time for that, then this person can delay. However if he/she had specified the time, then it is obligatory for him/her to perform Hajj in that specific time and if the person does not perform that purposely he/she should pay its compensation



and perform it in another time as a precaution.

## **Article 19**

Whenever a person does Nazr for performing Hajj on the condition of achieving a goal and this person dies before achieving that goal, then Ghazaa (performing an act in a time other than its proper time for compensation) of Nazr is not necessary. But if he/she dies after achieving that goal then his/her heirs should perform Ghazaa of that Nazr in behalf of that dead person, or take a proxy for him, and as a precaution it is better to subtract the amount of money for this act from the main inheritance, with the satisfaction of all heir if they are all adults.

## **Kinds of Hajj**

### **Article 20**

Hajj can be performed in three ways: “Hajj al-Tamattu”, “Hajj al-Qiran” (Hajj al-Qiran involves combining Umrah and Hajj, with only one Ihram for both) and “Hajj al-Ifrad” (Hajj al-Ifrad involves performing Hajj only. A sacrificial animal is not obligatory when performing Hajj al-Ifrad).

“Hajj al-Tamattu” is to be performed by people who live forty-eight miles (approximately seventy-seven kilometers) or more from Mecca and the second and the third ways are for the people who live in great Mecca or in a place closer than this distance.

### **Article 21**

Whenever a person who lives in Mecca travels out of Mecca and returns to the city, then this person can perform Hajj al-Tamattu’, Hajj al-Qiran or Hajj al-Ifrad.

Whenever a person who belongs to a place beyond the distance specified, lives in Mecca for more than two years then he/she should act as the people of Mecca, even if this person had been able to perform Hajj or has gained this ability after staying in the town, and even if he/she had stayed in Mecca for a lifetime or for a limited time.

### **Article 22**

According to the fact that most of Muslims in the world should perform Hajj al-Tamattu’, then rulings which have been mentioned in these rites are for performing Hajj al-Tamattu’.

# Framework of Hajj al-Tamattu'

## Article 23

The summary of Hajj al-Tamattu' is as follows:

### 1- Umrah al-Tamattu'

Umrah al-Tamattu' should only be performed in the months of Hajj (which are Shawwal, Dhu'l-Qa'dah and Dhu'l-Hijjah) and the following acts are obligatory in performing that:

- 1- Wearing Ihram from Mecca with the intention of Umrah al-Tamattu'.
- 2- Doing the Tawaf of Ka'ba seven times
- 3- Performing two Rak'ats of prayer of Tawaf behind the Maqam (station) of Ibrahim.
- 4- Sa'y –The shuttling between Safa and Marwah seven times
- 5- Tqisir which means cutting the hair and nail but pilgrim should not suffice in cutting only the nail.

When the Hajji comes out of the Ihram after performing these five acts the things and acts that had been Haraam for him/her because of Ihram, now becomes Halaal.

### 2- Hajj al-Tamattu'

Hajj al-Tamattu' consists of following acts:

- 1- Wearing Ihram from Mecca.
- 2- Wuquf that means staying in Arafat from noon until sunset of the day nine of Dhu'l-Hijjah.
- 3- Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haraam and staying in there from dawn to sunrise of the day of Eid al-Qurban.
- 4- Going to Mena (Mina) and performing Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba (throwing seven pebbles at the place, which is allocated at the end of Mena that is called "al-Jamarah al-Aqaba or al-Jamarah al-Quswa).
- 5- Giving a sacrifice in Mena on the day of Eid (tenth of Dhu'l-Hijjah).
- 6- Tqisir. That means shaving the head or cutting a piece of hair or nail.
- 7- Tawaf of Ka'ba (this Tawaf is called Tawaf of pilgrimage).

8- Performing two Rak'ats of prayer of Tawaf.

9- Sa'y –The shuttling between Safa and Marwah seven times

When these acts had been performed then fragrance becomes Halaal for the pilgrim.

10- Performing another Tawaf around Ka'ba (this Tawaf is called Tawaf of Nisa').

11- Performing Two Rak'ats of prayer of Tawaf of Nisa'.

By performing these two acts the spouse also becomes Halaal for the pilgrim.

12- Returning to Mena and spending the eleventh and the twelfth nights (and in some conditions the thirteenth night) in there.

13- Performing Triple Ramy al-Jamarat (throwing seven pebbles to each of three places, which are situated in Mena) in the eleventh and the twelfth days.

And by performing these acts, the pilgrim can return to Mecca and his/her Hajj is completed.

These were the five acts of Umrah al-Tamattu', and thirteen acts of Hajj al-Tamattu' The details will be explained in next discussions.

## **Framework of Hajj al-Ifrad**

Hajj al-Ifrad is similar to Hajj al-Tamattu' with a difference that while there is a Qurban (sacrifice) in Hajj al-Tamattu' the same is not performed in Hajj al-Ifrad.

However it is Mustahab to do so and Umrah is performed after Hajj unlike Umrah al-Tamattu' that is performed before that.

We abstain from explaining Hajj al-Qiran because it is not performed these days.

# **Conditions of Hajj al-Tamattu'**

## **Article 24**

There are five conditions in Hajj al-Tamattu':

1- Niyah (Intention) which is that the pilgrim should intend to perform "Hajj al-Tamattu'" for Allah, therefore if this person intends to perform some other type of Hajj or has some doubt about performing

“Hajj al-Tamattu” or other type of Hajj or he/she does not have pure intention for Hajj, then his/her Hajj is not correct.

2- Both “Umrah” and “Hajj” should be performed in months of Hajj (Shawwal, Dhu’l-Qa’dah and Dhu’l-Hijjah), therefore it is not enough that a pilgrim performs all of Umrah or a part of it before the month of Shawwal.

3- A pilgrim should perform both “Umrah al-Tamattu” and “its Hajj” in one year, if he/she performs one of them in this year, and the next one in another year (even in the months of Hajj), then this Hajj is not correct.

4- As it was mentioned before, Ihram of “Hajj al-Tamattu” should be worn from Mecca.. There is no difference between different places or regions of Mecca. it can be worn from a house, mosque, or even in a street, but the best place for wearing Ihram is in “Masjid al-Haraam”.

5- If “Hajj al-Tamattu” is to be performed by proxy, then both “Umrah” and “Hajj” should be performed by the same person and it is not enough that a person performs Umrah and another one performs Hajj.

## **Article 25**

As an obligatory precaution, the pilgrim should not leave Mecca after performing “Umrah al-Tamattu” until the time of Hajj commences and he/she performs Hajj. Unless there is a special necessity or need that in this case as obligatory precaution the pilgrim should wear Ihram with the intention of Hajj and leave Mecca with Ihram and remain in that state in return, until he/she performs the rites of Hajj; but if wearing Ihram causes this person severe hardship then he/she can renounce that act. Then there is no difference in this ruling between obligatory and Mustahab Hajj.

## **Article 26**

The rule of prohibition of leaving Mecca is for people who have performed Umrah al-Tamattu’ and want to travel a far distance. Therefore going to a distance one or two parasang (each parasang is approximately 5.6 km) far from Mecca is not prohibited and people who live out of Mecca can return to their homes after performing Umrah.

## **Article 27**

Today, Mecca has advanced to a big city, but all that is called Mecca has the rulings of Mecca , like Masjid al-Haraam that has advanced and expanded. but all of that is within the rulings of Masjid al-Haraam.

## **Article 28**

Whenever a pilgrim goes out of Mecca after performing Umrah without Ihram and passes the Miqats, then in return he/she should become Muhrim (a person who is in state of Ihram) from Mecca and perform Umrah, unless his/her return is on the same month that he/she has leaved Mecca (for instance, a pilgrim has leaved in Dhu'l-Qa'dah and has returned in Dhu'l-Qa'dah).

## **Article 29**

A person who has a duty to perform Hajj al-Tamattu' cannot return to Hajj al-Ifrad or Hajj al-Qiran, unless there is not enough time available in the way that this person cannot finish Umrah and join Hajj. In this case, the pilgrim can leave "Hajj al-Tamattu'" and make intention for Hajj al-Ifrad or Hajj al-Qiran, and performs the duties of Hajj and after finishing Hajj performs Umrah al-Mufradah (similar to other persons who perform Hajj al-Qiran and Ifrad).

The purpose of not having enough time is that pilgrims cannot perform Wuquf in Arafat from noon until the sunset of the day of Arafat.

## **Article 30**

A woman who has menstruation and cannot perform Tawaf and the prayer of Tawaf, , before the time of Hajj (and Wuquf to Arafa), Therefore she should make intention of Hajj al-Ifrad and go with that Ihram to Arafat and perform the rites of Hajj, and perform the tawafs of Hajj and prayers of tawaf.

After returning to Mecca and becoming clean, she should go to Masjid al-Tan'eem for performing "Umrah al-Mufradah" after finishing Hajj and becomes Muhrim from that place and perform acts of Umrah al-Mufradah. It is better to perform Tawaf al-Nisa' as a precaution.

## **Article 31**

There is no problem for women, to prevent their menstruation by using pills or such, in order to perform the rites of Hajj al-Tamattu' like Tawaf and prayer of Tawaf in the state of being clean.

## **Miqats (stated places) of Ihram (preparing to**

# perform Hajj)

## Article 32

Miqat is a place which pilgrims should wear Ihram and from there go for Hajj or Umrah. They should not pass these places without Ihram.

## Article 33

Miqats of Ihram are ten places of which five of them are the main ones.

## Article 34

### 1) Masjid al-Shajarah

Masjid al-Shajarah is located beside Medina, and today it is known as “Abar Ali”. All persons who want to perform Hajj from Medina should become Muhrim from this place, and it is not permitted to delay in this act and for example becomes Muhrim from Juhfah, which is located in the middle of the way of Mecca to Medina, unless ill or weak people or other persons who have other problems.

## Article 35

It is not obligatory to wear Ihram from inside the mosque and it is possible to perform this act beside the mosque, and there is no difference between old mosque and this new one which has been expanded so much, therefore women who are in their menstrual period can wear Ihram outside of the mosque.

## Article 36

### 2) Juhfah

Juhfah is a place in the middle of the distance between Medina and Mecca, 150 km from Mecca, which is some distance from the main road, and this is the Miqat of people who come for Hajj from Egypt, north of Africa, Syria, Jordan and Lebanon (road trip), also all persons who are passing from this way.

## Article 37

Muslims from Iran and other places who enter the airport of Jeddah by airplane and do not want to go to medina can go to Juhfah, and become Muhrim there and then go to Mecca.

## **Article 38**

There is a mosque in Juhfah, from where it is possible to wear Ihram from inside or outside of that mosque. But it is better to wear Ihram from inside the mosque.

## **Article 39**

### **3) Wadi Aqeeq**

Wadi Aqeeq is a place located in north east of Mecca approximately 94 km from the city and that is the Miqat for people of “Iraq” and “Najd”, and all people who are passing from that way can become Muhrim from there. This Miqat has three sections; section one is called “Maslakh”, and second one is called “Qumrah” and the third one is called “Dhat Irq” (also Zaat Irq) and although it is better to wear Ihram from “Maslakh”, which is the first section, it is permitted to become Muhrim from any of these three sections.

## **Article 40**

### **4- Qarn al-Manazil**

Qarn al-Manazil is a place located near “Ta’if” which is about 94 km from Mecca and this is the Miqat for people from there or those who pass from that way. Also all people who enter Jeddah can go to that place and become Muhrim from there.

## **Article 41**

### **5- Yalamlam**

“Yalamlam” is the name of a hill in southern regions of Mecca (about 84 km from Mecca) and this is the Miqat of those who come from the south parts of Arabian Peninsula like Yemen to Mecca, also all people who pass that way can become Muhrim in there.

There are five main Miqats.

## **Article 42**

### **6- The City of Mecca**

“Mecca” is the Miqat for “hajj al-Tamattu”; it means that pilgrims wear Ihram for performing Hajj, in which its first act is going to “Arafat”, after performing Umrah from the city of Mecca.

Article 43 There is no difference between places of Mecca and the pilgrim can become Muhrim from any place of this city, even places that have been added to Mecca today during the advancements of city in the past years. But the place should not be out of the zone of Haram as an obligatory precaution; For example, today Mecca has been expanded and has gone beyond Masjid al-Tan'eem, which is the closest boundary of Haram, and if a person becomes Muhrim from that place which is out of boundaries of Haram, this act is not free of problem and the best place is Masjid al-Haraam.

## **Article 44**

### **7- House of the Pilgrim**

Miqat for persons whose houses are closer to Mecca than the Miqat, then their own houses can be their Miqat. However, it is permitted and also better than they go to one of those first quintet Miqats and become Muhrim from those places.

## **Article 45**

### **8- Ji'irranah**

“Ji'irranah” is a place at the end of Haram between Ta'if and Mecca, and people of Mecca and those who have lived there for two years of more, should wear Ihram from this place as an obligatory precaution.

## **Article 46**

### **9- Parallel places to one of Miqats**

Those who do not pass Miqats should become Muhrim whenever they reach a place parallel to one of the Miqat and it is not necessary to go to one of first quintet Miqats, and if they pass two places parallel to two of Miqats, they should wear Ihram in the first place that is parallel to the first Miqat.

## **Article 47**

When the pilgrim surely knows the location of the place parallel to Miqat or he/she asks the location from informed people, it is enough for wearing Ihram from that place. But if he/she has doubt about this matter and there is no way of finding the correct answer, then it is better that he/she performs Nazr of Ihram before reaching that place and becomes Muhrim from there.



## **Article 48**

Whenever a pilgrim is passing from a direction in which there is no place parallel to one of Miqats, then he/she should go to one of Miqats and become Muhrim from there as a precaution; and if this not possible, then he should become Muhrim from a place where there is a possibility of being parallel to one of Miqats, in his/her opinion, and then renew his/her Ihram after reaching the closest point to Haram (around Mecca). This means that the pilgrim makes the intention again and says “Labbayk”.

## **Article 49**

There is no difference between places, which are parallel to Miqats in being in the desert, sea or air. Therefore, if the pilgrim passes one place parallel to one of Miqats in airplane, then he/she should become Muhrim from that place and immediately says “Labbayk” (and ruling for the matter is that the pilgrim is under a roof in this condition, will be mentioned later).

## **Article 50**

### **10- Adni al-Hal**

“Adni al-Hal” means the first point out of Haram, and this is the Miqat of those who perform Umrah al-Mufradah (consisting of Umrah of Hajj al-Qiran and Ifrad or Umrah al-Mufradah, which is possible to perform in any time of the year).

## **Article 51**

It is better for a pilgrim to wear Ihram from one of these three places, “Hudaybiyah” or “Ji’irranah” or “Tan’eem” which are famous among people of Mecca for Umrah al-Mufradah .It is easier for those who want to perform Umrah al-Mufradah after Hajj to go to Masjid al-Tan’eem, (which is about 80 km from Masjid al-Haraam and today has been become as a part of the city of Mecca) and become Muhrim from that place.

## **Article 52**

Those who are going to Mecca for performing Umrah al-Mufradah from Jeddah should become Muhrim from “Hudaybiyah” (which is about 17 km from Mecca and is the farthest boundary of Haram).

## **Article 53**

It is better that Ihram of Umrah al-Mufradah also perform from one of first quintet Miqats (Masjid al-Shajarah, Juhfah, Qarn al-Manazil, Wadi Aqeeq and Yalamlam). Therefore, it is better that those who

intend to perform Umrah al-Mufradah and went to Medina before, become Muhrim from Masjid al-Shajarah or at least Juhfah.

## Article 54

Briefly, sequence of Miqats is as follows:

1- Miqat of "Umrah of Hajj al-Tamattu'" is one of first quintet Miqats, if the Hajj is obligatory or Mustahab.

2- Miqat of "Hajj al-Tamattu'" is Mecca.

3- Miqat of "Hajj al-Ifrad or Qiran" is one of quintet Miqats.

4- Miqat of "Umrah al-Mufradah" is Adni al-Hal; it means the first point that is out of Haram of Mecca (like Tan'eem, Ji'irranah or Hodaybiyah).

5- Miqat of those whom their own houses are after Miqats is that their houses can become Muhrim from there for Umrah al-Tamattu' or Hajj al-Ifrad and Qiran, but it is better that they also become Muhrim from one of quintet Miqats.

## Rulings of Miqats

### Article 55

Wearing Ihram before Miqat is not permitted, as it is Haraam to pass Miqat without Ihram. Pilgrims should only become Muhrim in Miqats, except on two conditions:

1- When the pilgrim performs Nazr for becoming Muhrim before Miqat, it is necessary to fulfill his/her Nazr from anywhere, and not necessary to renew Ihram in Miqat. Accordingly, when a person has doubt in Miqat or places parallel to that, he/she can perform "Nazr of Ihram" before reaching the doubtful place and become Muhrim from there and there is no difference between obligatory and Mustahab Hajj. Also Nazr of woman has no problem if it does not cause disturbance for her husband.

2- A person who wants to perform Umrah of month of Rajab and has a fear that month ends before he/she can reach the Miqat, can become Muhrim before Miqat. It is permitted for him in order not to lose the superiority and benefit of Umrah of month of Rajab.

## **Article 56**

Reaching the Miqat should be proved by certainty, or confidence or popularity among people of the region, or at least by the testimony of an impartial person. It is not permitted to wear Ihram in doubt (except by performing Nazr in the way that mentioned in past article).

## **Article 57**

It is not permitted for a person to pass Miqat without Ihram unless there is another Miqat in the way that in this case Ihram from the second Miqat is correct, although it is better to become Muhrim from the first Miqat as an obligatory precaution.

## **Article 58**

Whenever a person passes Miqat without Ihram deliberately and with awareness, then he/she should return to Miqat and become Muhrim, and if it is not possible for him/her to return then his/her Hajj is invalidated and should perform it the next year.

## **Article 59**

Whenever a pilgrim passes Miqat because of ignorance or forgetfulness, when he/she remembers, should wear Ihram wherever he/she is. If the place is out of Haram and if he/she has entered Haram then should go out of Haram (for instance Tan'eem) and wear Ihram and if a person cannot go out of Haram should wear Ihram from the place.

## **Article 60**

Whenever a woman is in her menstrual period and thinks that it is not permitted for her to wear Ihram and does not wear it in Miqat, then she should return to Miqat if she can and become Muhrim. If she cannot return to Miqat, then she should go out of Haram and if that is not also possible she should wear Ihram from the place that she is in, and her Hajj and Umrah is correct.

## **Article 61**

As it has been mentioned before, Ihram for Hajj al-Tamattu' is performed from Mecca. Now if a pilgrim goes to "Arafat" without Ihram because of ignorance or forgetfulness, then he/she should return to Mecca, if it possible, and if it is not he/she should become Muhrim in "Arafat", "Mash'ar" or "Mena" (before Ramy al-Jamarat and sacrificing), and if he/she remembers after Ramy al-Jamarat or sacrificing, then the time of Ihram has passed and the Hajj is correct.

## Article 62

Whenever a person renounces Ihram because of ignorance or forgetfulness and remembers after finishing the acts, then his/her acts are correct if it happens in Umrah al-Tamattu' or Hajj or Umrah al-Mufradah.

## Process of Ihram

As it is said before, the first act of Umrah and Hajj is "Ihram" and obligatory acts of Ihram are three things as follows:

### Article 63

#### First: Niyah (Intention)

Making intention of Ihram as in the way that the pilgrim should intend not to perform the acts (that will be mentioned later) and consider them as Haraam for himself/herself and performs the acts of Umrah or Hajj after that, and by considering that meaning it is enough to say by words or in his/her heart:

"I wear Ihram for Umrah al-Tamattu' for obligatory (or Mustahab) Hajj for myself (or in behalf of a person whom I am his/her proxy) for closeness to Allah (قربة الى الله)" and the purpose of saying I wear Ihram is to prohibiting himself/herself from the acts (which will be mention later).

And the pilgrim says for Ihram of Hajj: "I wear Ihram for obligatory Hajj for closeness to Allah (قربة الى الله)" and in Umrah al-Mufradah: "I wear Ihram for Umrah al-Mufradah for closeness to Allah (قربة الى الله)".

### Article 64

It is not necessary to utter the intention but it is enough to have this intention in the heart, but it is better to express the intention by word adding this to the internal intention.

### Article 65

The purpose of intending for closeness to Allah is intending to satisfy Allah and being close to his pure essence. The pilgrim should have the intention of performing the rites of Umrah or Hajj in that state and it is better to define from the beginning that he/she has the intention of performing Umrah or Hajj. For example "Hajjat al-Islam" which means obligatory Hajj because of gaining the ability of performing Hajj

or “Mustahab Hajj” or “Hajj of Nazr” or “Hajj by proxy”, but it is also permitted to make intention for Ihram intending to define the type of act later.

## Article 66

If after making intention of Ihram, and prohibiting himself/herself from the acts which are Haraam for Muhrim, the pilgrims intends to perform some of those acts (for example, he/she is in travel at that moment and is sitting under the roof of car or airplane unnecessarily), then it is not free of problem for his/her Ihram.

## Article 67

Knowing the details of Haraam acts is not necessary and it is enough to know them as a whole.

## Article 68

### Second: Saying Labbayk

It is obligatory to say the “quadruple Labbayks” during Ihram with correct Arabic accent and it should be as follows as obligatory precaution:

لَبَّيْكَ اللَّهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ، إِنَّا لَحَمْدُكَ وَالنِّعْمَةُ لَكَ وَالْمُلْكُ، لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ.

**Allah! I comply (and obey) you, again I comply to you, and one more time I obey you, there is no partner for you, I comply to you, solely you deserve all praise and grace and sovereignty are exclusive to you, there is no partner for you!”**

It is better to abstain adding other expressions, except those that will be mentioned in Mustahab acts later.

## Article 69

If the pilgrim cannot express these word with correct Arabic accent, it is enough that another person says them articulately for him/her and the pilgrim recites them after that person, and if he/she cannot pronounce correctly he/she should say as much as he/she can and express also its meaning as a precaution and a person who has the ability of pronouncing correctly, can say the words in behalf of that pilgrim, too.

## **Article 70**

It is obligatory to say Labbayk during Ihram only once (in the way that mentioned before) and after that it is Mustahab to repeat that in different conditions as much as possible. E.g. while getting in and leaving a car, passing low and high lands, after awakening and after prayers It is better that men recite these words with a loud voice.

## **Article 71**

It is obligatory that the pilgrim recites Labbayk when he/she sees the houses of Mecca during Ihram of Umrah al-Tamattu', and at the noon of the day of Arafa during Ihram of Hajj, and at the time of seeing Kaa'ba in Umrah al-Mufradah. If the pilgrim has gone out of Mecca for Ihram, and if he/she is coming to Mecca from out of the city should stop and say Labbayk when he/she is entering the region of Haram.

## **Article 72**

A pilgrim that is unable to speak, can point with his/her hand instead of saying "Labbayk" and moves his/her tongue as normal and it is better that another person says Labbayk in behalf of that pilgrim, but it is not obligatory.

## **Article 73**

Children also can become Muhrim for Umrah or Hajj, and if they can distinguish between good and evil they can say "Labbayk" with the intention (Niyyah), and if they do cannot differentiate, then a person makes the intention and says Labbayk on behalf of them .Whenever a person is unconscious in Miqat, it is possible to make the intention and say Labbayk on behalf of him/her.

## **Article 74**

Twenty-five acts, which are Haraam for Muhrim, are not Haraam for him/her before saying "Labbayk" even if he/she has made the intention and has worn the clothing of Ihram. Therefore, there is no punishment if the pilgrim performs one of the acts that are Haraam for Muhrim before saying Labbayk; in fact, "Labbayk" is like "Allahu Akbar" at the beginning of the prayer that a Muhrim does not enter the state of prayer before saying that, and whenever a pilgrim has doubt that if he/she has said "Labbayk" or not, nothing is also Haraam for him from the prohibited acts of a Muhrim.

## **Article 75**

Whenever a pilgrim is in Miqat and has doubt that if he/she has said Labbayk or not, then he/she should say the Labbayk. And if he/she has passed Miqat then he/she can return to Miqat and say it as a

precaution. If it is not possible to return, then he/she should say it in that place, but if the pilgrim do not know that if he/she has said Labbayk correctly or not, then he/she should consider it as correct and his/her Ihram is correct.

## **Article 76**

### **Third: Wearing Ihram Clothing**

It is obligatory for a person who wants to wear Ihram, to remove all clothes which are Haraam for Muhrim, and then wear the two clothes of Ihram. Wrap one of them around the waist (that is called "Izar") and put another one on the shoulder like Aba (that is called "Rida"); this ruling is exclusive to men and it is not necessary for women to wear these two parts of clothing beneath or over their own clothes.

## **Article 77**

It is an obligatory precaution that clothing of Ihram and the way of wearing be as it is common. This means that the pilgrim should wrap the loincloth (Izar) in the way that at least it covers the body from the belly to the knees and puts Rida' on the shoulder in a way that it covers the rest of the body. There is no condition about the quality or color of the Ihram clothing, but it should not be sewn.

## **Article 78**

It is an obligatory precaution to wear Ihram clothing before making intention and saying Labbayk.

## **Article 79**

It is an obligatory precaution not to tie a loincloth around the neck (but tying it around the waist has no problem) and the best way is to tie a belt over the Izar.

Tying two sides of Rida', also fastening that by a pin, or putting a piece of stone in one side and fastening that to the other side with a string (as it is common among some of Hajjis) is no problem, although it is better to renounce these acts.

## **Article 80**

If a pilgrim wears Ihram while he/she has a shirt or other common cloth on because of ignorance or forgetfulness, then his/her Ihram is correct, but he/she should immediately remove that cloth and wear only Ihram clothing, and if this act has been performed deliberately, then after removing the clothes it is a precaution to make the intention and say Labbayk again.

## **Article 81**

Whenever a pilgrim puts on a shirt after wearing Ihram clothing because of ignorance or forgetfulness, then he/she should remove that cloth from the bottom and if it is not possible he/she should tear the clothe and remove it.

## **Article 82**

It is not obligatory to have Ihram clothing on all the time and the pilgrim can remove that for washing or changing or any other purposes.

## **Article 83**

Whenever a pilgrim is ill and cannot take off his/her common clothes in Miqat, it is enough to make the intention of Ihram and say Labbayk, and if it is possible for him/her to remove his/her common clothes temporarily he/she should do it and wear Ihram clothing. And after that if it is not possible to continue with that clothing he/she can wear his/her common clothes, and if this act was not possible in Miqat and after a while his/her health conditions got better for wearing Ihram clothing, it is an obligatory precaution to return to Miqat (if he/she can) and wears Ihram again, but if it was not possible to return to Miqat he/she should change the clothes in that place, but renewing Ihram is not necessary.

## **Article 84**

Wearing more than two parts of Ihram clothing for preventing from cold or heat or other than that has no problem.

## **Article 85**

All things, which are the conditions of prayer clothing, are also the conditions of Ihram clothing, therefore Ihram clothing should be clean and not being from the parts of Haraam–meat animals or pure silk or interwoven with gold (there is no difference between men and women in this ruling as obligatory precaution, although men and women have difference in the matter of wearing silk and gold–interwoven fabrics during prayer).

The cases that impurity (being Najis) of the clothing for prayer has been forgiven, also implies on Ihram clothing.

## **Article 86**

Izar loincloth should not be see-through and it is a precaution that Rida' should be either in this way.



## **Article 87**

Whenever the Ihram clothing becomes Najis, the pilgrim should wash that, and if it is not possible he will do it whenever it is possible (If Rida' becomes Najis the pilgrim can remove it temporarily).

## **Acts that are Haraam in the state of Ihram**

### **Article 88**

When a pilgrim becomes Muhrim the following acts are Haraam for him/her to do and some of them have atonement. Some of the Faqihs have mentioned them as twenty-five items, but we believe that some of them are Makrooh (disliked) that its explanation will be mentioned later.

These acts are as follows:

- 1- Wearing sewed clothing (for men)
- 2- Wearing a thing which covers all top of the foot (for men)
- 3- Covering the head (for men)
- 4- Covering the face (for women)
- 5- Wearing ornaments
- 6- Applying mascara and kohl
- 7- Looking at the mirror
- 8- Using fragrance
- 9- Applying oils on the body
- 10- Cutting the nails
- 11- Going under the shade during travel (for men)
- 12- Removing hair from the body
- 13- Performing marriage

14- Looking at spouse with sexual desire

15- Touching

16- Kissing

17- Performing sexual intercourse

18- Masturbating

19- Killing insects

20 & 21- Extracting tooth and blood from the body

22- Telling lies

23- Disputing

24- Hunting desert animals

25- Carrying weapons

Explanation of these rulings will be cleared in later articles.

# 1. Wearing Sewed Clothing

Wearing clothes like shirt, cassock, trousers and underclothes are Haraam for men in the state of Ihram. And it is an obligatory precaution to abstain from wearing any sewn clothes, woven clothes and clothes that their parts are attached to each other or have made been made like and are in the form of shirt, overcoat, trousers etc., even if it is not sewn and needle and thread have not been used in making them, it is a precaution to abstain from wearing all these clothes.

## Article 89

There is no difference between large or small in sewn clothes. However pulling blankets, which their edges have been sewn, over shoulders for protection from cold and such, or pulling that over the body (on the condition that pilgrim does not cover his/her head with that) has no problem, also it has no problem if the edges of Ihram clothing have been sewn although renouncing is a precaution.

## **Article 90**

Wearing a coin bag on the waist has no problem although it is sewn (coin bag is a little bag for carrying cash, coins). Also wearing a belt over Ihram clothing has no problem if it is sewn or not. Also wearing a wraparound even if it has made from a sewn fabric or not, but in all these cases it is Mustahab precaution that all clothing must not to be sewn.

## **Article 91**

Wearing a truss has no problem even if it is sewn, also carrying sewn bags which pilgrims carry on their shoulders or necks and place their needed objects in them has no problem, and there is no problem if they are sewn, too.

## **Article 92**

As we said before, it is an obligatory precaution that the pilgrim does not tie loincloth around the neck, but tying that around the waist, especially when it is needed, also tying Rida' around or using a pin for fixing the position of Rida' or Izar has no problem, but it is better to renounce that acts. The method, which is common among some of Hajjis, of putting a piece of stone on one side of clothing and fastening it with a rubber strap or a string to another side is also permitted.

## **Article 93**

Wearing all kinds of sewn clothing is permitted for women, except gloves, which are not permitted to wear.

## **Article 94**

The atonement of wearing sewn clothing in cases of necessity is a sheep, but if this act is performed because of ignorance or forgetfulness, then it has no atonement.

## **2. Wearing a thing which covers all top of the foot (shoes and socks)**

## **Article 95**

Wearing shoes, which covers both the top of the feet like boots and also wearing socks in the state of Ihram is not permitted, even if they cover the shank or not. But if they cover a part of top of the feet, like straps of sandals and shoes (that a part of the top of the feet are shown by wearing them) are permitted. This ruling is exclusive for men and wearing socks and shoes has no problem for women.

## **Article 96**

If the towel of Ihram is long and covers the top of the foot, or the pilgrim for example puts a hot towel on the foot for reducing the pain, then these have no problem.

## **Article 97**

Whenever a man wears socks or shoes in the case of necessity or deliberately, this act has no atonement and obligatory precaution is to shear the topside of the shoe if the pilgrim forced to wear socks or shoes.

# **3. Covering the Head for Men**

## **Article 98**

Covering all of the head in the state of Ihram is Haraam for Muhrim men, and the obligatory precaution is that they do not cover even a part of the head. But covering the head with hands or with a pillow during sleep is permitted. Also putting the strap of bag on the head is permitted. Covering the face is permitted for men.

## **Article 99**

It is an obligatory precaution not to cover the ears, too.

## **Article 100**

Tying a handkerchief around the head because of headache has no problem, also drying the head with handkerchief or towel is permitted on condition that the pilgrim does not cover the head with that.

## **Article 101**

Whenever a Muhrim forgets and covers the head, it is Mustahab to say Labbayk again but it is not obligatory.

## **Article 102**

It is an obligatory precaution not to cover the head with “mud” or “henna” etc. or putting something like a basket on the head.

## **Article 103**

A Muhrim is not permitted to sink his/her head into the water, even if the rest of the body is out of the water, but pouring water on the head for Ghusl or other purposes and taking a shower is permitted; but a Muhrim should not sink his head into the water in the bathtub.

## **Article 104**

The atonement of covering the head is one sheep for men as an obligatory precaution, but in case of ignorance or forgetfulness there is no atonement.

# **4. Covering the face for Women**

## **Article 105**

Covering the face is not permitted for women in the state of Ihram; even it is with a mask, fan or any other thing. The obligatory precaution is not to cover the face with mud or such like that.

## **Article 106**

Covering a part of the face in the way that is not called mask is not Haraam, also covering the face during sleep or putting the face on the pillow or covering it by hands are permitted.

## **Article 107**

It is permitted that a woman pulls her veil down in the way that it shades half or all of her face, even if it sticks to the face or not. But the obligatory precaution is to perform this act only when she wants to cover

herself from men and keeps her face open in other conditions (the round of the face can be shown in other than in the state of Ihram).

## **Article 108**

The atonement of covering the face is one sheep for women as obligatory precaution.

# **5. Wearing Ornaments**

## **Article 109**

It is not permitted that men wear ornamental rings. Rings, which are used for blessings, are not a problem. Therefore, the pilgrim should abstain from wearing ornamental rings, even if they are used for ornamental purposes or blessings.

## **Article 110**

Wearing ornaments is absolutely Haraam for a woman in the state of Ihram, but ornaments that she normally uses can be worn in the state of Ihram if she hides them.

## **Article 111**

Using henna is not permitted for men and women if it has ornamental purposes.

## **Article 112**

It is an obligatory precaution that a Muhrim (man or woman) abstain from wearing any other kinds of ornament. He/she should not wear ornamented Ihram clothing of sandals and abstain from any kind of makeup and decoration on the head, face or other parts of the body.

## **Article 113**

Coloring the hair has problem for a Muhrim if it is called decorating, even if he/she have not intended for decoration, and if it has no decorating purpose (like using henna for treatment) then there is no problem in doing that. Also coloring the hair and using henna before Ihram in the way that its effects remain until the time of Ihram has no problem, unless the pilgrim had intended for decoration for Ihram from the beginning.

## **6. Applying Mascara or Kohl**

### **Article 114**

Applying mascara or kohl or black materials or other kinds is Haraam for men and women in the state of Ihram if it is for decorating purposes. If it is not for decorating e.g. for eye treatment, then it has no problem if it is applied in a form other than decoration.

## **7. Looking at the Mirror**

### **Article 115**

It is not permitted for men or women to look at the mirror in the state of Ihram for checking of make up or hair or beard etc.. But it has no problem in other purposes like looking the sides of the car, or observing the tooth or mouth by a physician, or looking at the mirror without seeing his/her own face, or looking at the mirror for seeing the condition of injuries.

### **Article 116**

Looking in the water reflection or a polished or glossy object for checking the condition of the face and hair similar things is Haraam in the state of Ihram.

### **Article 117**

If a Muhrim looks at the mirror involuntarily then there is no problem. However it is better to cover the mirrors of the rooms in which Muhrim are staying there during Hajj in order that they do not look at the mirrors suddenly and involuntarily.

### **Article 118**

Looking into the glass of a window or eyeglasses from which the other side is visible has no problem.

## **8. Using Fragrance**

### **Article 119**

Using fragrance like perfumes, musk, saffron, rose water and other thing by smelling or rubbing on the body or on clothing, or spraying in the room or eating fragrant foods are Haraam for Muhrim men and women in the state of Ihram.

### **Article 120**

Eating fragrant fruits like apples and oranges is not a problem, but it is better to abstain from smelling their fragrance.

### **Article 121**

A Muhrim cannot wash himself/herself with aromatic soaps and shampoos, and it is necessary to abstain from putting these things beside the Ihram clothing, which causes them to be fragrant. Hajjis should not put these objects in their sacks of their Ihram clothing.

### **Article 122**

Whenever a Muhrim reaches a place where there are pleasant odors present, he/she should put something on the nose in order not to smell the fragrance, unless this act causes him/her strong hardship. But unlike this situation if a Muhrim reaches a place which has an unpleasant odor he/she should not close the nose but can pass that place quickly.

### **Article 123**

Smelling flowers is not permitted for a Muhrim as obligatory precaution.

## **9. Applying Oils on the Body**

### **Article 124**

Applying any kind of oil or cream is not permitted for a Muhrim, even if they are fragrant or not. Even



applying fragrant oils before Ihram in the way that its odor remains in the state of Ihram is prohibited. But applying non-fragrance oil and cream before Ihram is permitted.

## **Article 125**

Eating greasy food is permitted for a Muhrim, even if it causes the greasiness around the mouth or hand.

## **Article 126**

Applying oils or creams for treatment on the body is permitted.

# **10. Cutting the Nails**

## **Article 127**

Cutting the nails of hand or foot, even cutting only one or some of the nails is Haraam for a Muhrim, but if the nail is damaged and its presence causes harm or severe discomfort then it can be cut.

## **Article 128**

Whenever cutting the nail occurs because of forgetfulness or ignorance about the matter, then nothing is on the Muhrim, but if it is performed deliberately its atonement is one portion of food (750 gr) for each nail and if he/she cuts all of the nails then the atonement is one sheep. If the Muhrim cuts the nails of the hands and feet in one session then the atonement is one sheep, but if this happens in two sessions then the atonement is two sheep.

## **Article 129**

There is no difference between cutting the nails by scissors, nail cutter or even by tooth.

## **Article 130**

A Muhrim can cut the nail in case of necessity, but it is an obligatory precaution to pay the same atonement.

## **Article 131**

Whenever a Muhrim cuts his/her nail according to the fatwa of a person (or a quoting by another person) in the state of Ihram and blood sheds, then paying the atonement of one sheep is obligatory for the person who has issued the fatwa and even if blood does not shed then, it is still a precaution to pay the atonement.

# **11. Going under the shade during travel**

## **Article 132**

A Muhrim man should not go under the shade during travel or keep a shade or an umbrella over his head. Therefore traveling on airplane or a roofed vehicle is not permitted for a Muhrim man, but it is permitted for women.

## **Article 133**

Going into a camp or under the roof of stations in middle of the way or in Mecca, Arafat, Mash'ar or Mena has no problem. Also passing roofed markets and tunnels, which have been made for pedestrians, is permitted.

## **Article 134**

Whenever a shade no effect on preventing one from sunlight and rain, men are permitted to go under that shade. Therefore Muhrim men can use roofed vehicles or airplane from dawn to sunrise or in full cloudy days, but using a shade on rainy nights has atonement.

## **Article 135**

Passing bridges in the way and staying in the shades of vehicles has no problem.

## **Article 136**

Ill persons and those whom sunlight harms them severely or is a strong discomfort can use roofed vehicles, but they should pay the atonement (the amount of atonement will be mentioned in the next article).

## **Article 137**

Whenever a Muhrim goes under the shade because of ignorance or forgetfulness then there is no atonement on him, but if it has been done deliberately or according to a necessity, then it has atonement and the amount of the atonement is one sheep for each Ihram, meaning that one sheep is obligatory for the whole Ihram of Umrah and one sheep for the whole Ihram of Hajj.

## **Article 138**

It is better to perform Zebh (ritual slaughter) for atonement of Umrah in Mecca and those related to Hajj in Mena, but it is permitted to delay this act and perform it in the homeland. If it is hard to find people who deserve the food, it is better to perform this act in the homeland, but Hajjis should be aware not to forget it.

## **Article 139**

A Sheep of atonement should be used completely by poor persons and Hajji can use none of that.

# **12. Removing hair from the body**

## **Article 140**

A Muhrim should not remove hair from the his/her body, even if it is performed by shaving, scissoring or removing by any other means, even if a Muhrim can do it by himself/herself or forcing another person to do that. Removing even one hair from the body is not permitted and there is no difference between the parts of limbs of the body.

## **Article 141**

If a Muhrim knows that combing causes hair removal then it is not permitted to comb the hair of head or face, and it is a precaution that the Muhrim abstains from combing hair in the state of Ihram. Also a Muhrim should be aware that no hair is to be removed by scratching.

## **Article 142**

Whenever hair causes illness or severe discomfort, it is permitted to remove it but it has atonement and the amount of that will be mentioned in the next article.

## **Article 143**

Whenever a Muhrim shaves the hair of the head or both armpits of one of them deliberately, then the atonement of that is one sheep, but if he/she shaves his head because of a necessity then he/she has the choice of one sheep, three days of fasting or feeding six poor persons by giving each of them two portion of food (approximately one and a half kilogram). It is an obligatory precaution to pay the same atonement for removing the hairs of the armpit, but if the Muhrim removes a part or some of the hairs of the head, the face or beneath the chin, then feeding only one needy person is enough.

## **Article 144**

There is no atonement if a Muhrim removes a hair because of ignorance about the matter or forgetfulness, and whenever Muhrim rubs the hand on the body during Ghusl or ablution for prayer and hair is removed in this way then also there is nothing on him/her, but if he/she rubs the hand on the face and head or the body without any purpose, and hair is removed in this way, then it is an obligatory precaution to give some food to a needy person.

## **Article 145**

A Muhrim cannot remove hair from the body of another person, even if that person is in the state of Ihram or not, and even if it is performed by razor or scissor or any other instrument (but it has no atonement). Therefore people cannot shave others' heads or faces in Mena when they are exiting from the state of Ihram, but they should exit from the state of Ihram first and then perform that act.

# **13. Performing Marriage**

## **Article 146**

Performing marriage is not permitted for a Muhrim in the state of Ihram, even if he recites the marriage statement or deputizes another person to do that Even if the marriage is performed permanently or temporarily, marriage is invalidated in this way. If he knows about the prohibitions and stills perform the marriage, then that woman will be Haraam for him forever.

It is also not permitted that a Muhrim recites the statement of marriage for another person, even if that person is in the state of Ihram or not and in this way marriage of that person is also invalidated, but that woman does not become Haraam forever, and in none of these cases, the atonement is obligatory.

## **Article 147**

It is not permitted for a Muhrim to attend a marriage ceremony as the witness, also (as obligatory precaution) it is not permitted to testify a marriage, or propose for himself or another person.

# **14, 15 & 16. Looking, Touching & Kissing**

## **Article 148**

It is not permitted for Muhrim to look his/her spouse with sexual desire, or place the hand on his/her body or kiss him/her; however looking and touching without the intention of pleasure has no problem and it is a precaution to renounce kissing without sexual desire.

## **Article 149**

Whenever a Muhrim looks his/her spouse or touch him/her should pay the atonement of one sheep, and if this act causes an ejaculation then the obligatory precaution is to pay one camel and if he/she kiss his/her spouse with sexual desire then the atonement is one camel, even if ejaculation happens or not.

# **17. Sexual Intercourse**

## **Article 150**

Sexual intercourse with a spouse is Haraam in the state of Ihram and this matter has three types:

1- Whenever Muhrim performs sexual intercourse with his/her spouse deliberately in the Ihram of Hajj before staying at Mash'ar al-Haraam then his/her Hajj is corrupted, but it should be completed and retaken the following year. The atonement of this is one camel, and that man and woman should separate from each other (as an obligatory precaution) until the end of Hajj rituals or a third person accompanies them, and the next year they should also separate when they reach that place.

The ruling is the same for woman if she does it with free will, knowledge and deliberately, but if her husband forces her to do, then there is no atonement on her and her husband should pay twice the atonement. If they perform this act after Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haram and before Tawaf of Nisa' then their

Hajj is correct, but they have performed a sin and should pay the atonement of one camel.

2- Whenever sexual intercourse is performed in Umrah al-Tamattu', one camel is the atonement as an obligatory precaution, but Umrah is correct, even if it has performed before Sa'y of Safa and Marwah or before Taqsir and exiting from Ihram, but the Mustahab precaution is that if this has performed before Sa'y, then one should finish Umrah if it is possible and retake it later and if this is not possible, then one has to perform Hajj al-Tamattu' the next year.

3- Whenever this act is performed in Umrah al-Mufradah before finishing Sa'y of Safa and Marwah, then the Umrah is invalidated and the atonement is one camel, and the obligatory precaution is to finish Umrah and wait for one month, then Muhrim goes to one of Miqats, wears Ihram again, and retakes Umrah al-Mufradah. There is no difference between obligatory and Mustahab Umrah, but if it was after Tawaf and Sa'y (and before Taqsir) Umrah is not invalidated.

## **Article 151**

Whenever a Muhrim performs sexual intercourse with his/her spouse because of forgetfulness, carelessness or ignorance about the matter, then it does not harm his/her Hajj or Umrah and there is no atonement for that.

## **Article 152**

If a man has a sexual relation with his wife without intercourse, then he should pay the atonement of one camel, but it is not necessary to retake Hajj in the next year, the ruling is the same for woman and in the case of Ikrah (duress), this is like past articles.

## **Article 153**

Atonement is one camel in all the above cases as obligatory precaution, and there is no difference between temporary or permanent spouse, also anal and vaginal intercourses are the same in this ruling.

## **Article 154**

The above rulings are the same in obligatory and Mustahab Hajj and Hajj by proxy, but in the case of performing this act proxy has the right of leasehold, but he/she should act to the duties above (all these are in the case of performing deliberately).

## **18. Masturbation**

### **Article 155**

Whenever a Muhrim plays with his sexual organ and semen comes out, the ruling of that is the ruling of a man who has performed sexual intercourse with a woman which has been mentioned in past articles. If semen comes out because of playing with his wife or looking or visualizing such scenes, then atonement is not obligatory for him, but the obligatory precaution is that it has all rulings of intercourse which has been mentioned in past articles.

## **19. Killing Insects**

### **Article 156**

It is an obligatory precaution that a Muhrim does not kill insects like mosquitoes, flies, cootiea etc, even if they are on his/her body or clothes or not, and does not kill any moving creature, unless they cause him/her annoyance or if they are malefic and dangerous like snake, scorpion etc. An obligatory precaution is that the Muhrim does not fling the aforesaid insects from the body, and if he/she has done it involuntarily, then he/she should give some food to a poor person.

## **20. Extracting blood from the body**

### **Article 157**

Extracting blood from the body even it is done by phlebotomy, surgery, brushing or scratching in the way that blood extracted from the body, in other than the cases of necessity is Makrooh (disliked) and because some of Faqihs have consider it as Haraam, then the Mustahab precaution is to renounce that. It is even better to abstain from giving blood by today's methods in the state of Ihram, except in cases of necessity and for saving the life of a Muslim.

## 21. Tooth extraction

### Article 158

The ruling for tooth extraction is that if it causes bleeding then as the same as past article, it means that this act is Makrooh. But if does not cause bleeding then it is not a problem, although Mustahab precaution is to renounce that.

## 22. Telling Lies, Insulting and Priding

### Article 159

Lying and insulting are Haraam in any condition, but these are inhibited especially in the state of Ihram, it means these are from the act of which a Muhrim should renounce in performing them. It is an obligatory precaution to abstain from expressing the superiority of himself/herself to others or expressing the weakness of others against himself/herself, and these three acts have been collected in the term “Fosuuq” according to some Hadees quoted from the infallibles (a.s.) in the holy verse;

فَلَا رَفَثَ وَلَا فُسُوقَ وَلَا جِدَالَ فِي الْحَجِّ

*Let there be no obscenity, nor wickedness, nor wrangling in the Hajj. (2: 197)*

Thus whenever a Muhrim perform these acts, he/she has done wrong but the Ihram is not invalidated, and the atonement of that is Istighfar (asking forgiveness from Allah). It is better than a person abstain from saying anything bad, evil and incompatible to the soul of Hajj and say nothing other than good words.

## 23. Disputing and Fighting



## Article 160

“Dispute” is prohibited in the state of Ihram as it is mentioned in the verse above, and here the purpose of “Dispute” is that swearing to Allah from enmity and hatred of another person for proving a matter and saying “بلى والله” it means that “Yes, I swear Allah that the matter is like this”, or saying “لا والله” which means “No, I swear Allah that the matter is not like this” and there is no difference between Arabic, Persian or any other languages, any expression which has this meaning is Haraam to say in the state of Ihram.

## Article 161

True or false swearing is the same in this ruling, but if it is false then it’s atonement is one sheep at the first time, and if it is true and it is repeated three times, then the atonement is one sheep. But there is no atonement for saying less than three times, although it is an illegal act and a Muhrim should ask forgiveness from Allah.

## Article 162

It is better that a Muhrim abstains from any kind of dispute, debate and enmity in the state of Ihram, although it performs without swearing statements which has been said before, but expressing hatred and disgust and avoidance of enemies of Islam does not only harm the Ihram, but it is one of the duties of Muslims against infidels.

## Article 163

Whenever a Muhrim says “I swear to Allah that do not perform this act” because of kindness (not because of enmity) or says that “I swear to Allah to let me do it for you” then this is not Haraam and has not atonement.

# 24. Huting desert animals

## Article 164

Hunting desert animals or slaughtering them is Haraam in the state of Ihram, also hunting of birds is Haraam in this state and there is no difference that a Muhrim hunts alone or with the help of the others. Also pointing and referring the animal to the hunter, or tying and keeping the animal or eating the meat of a hunted animal (although another person has hunted or the Muhrim has hunted that animal before

Ihram) are Haraam.

## **Article 165**

Killing grasshoppers is not permitted for a Muhrim, therefore if he/she is passing a way in which there are grasshoppers, then he/she should change his/her way if it is possible, and if it is not he/she should be aware not to trample them. But it has no problem in inevitable case or if it causes strong hardness and discomfort, also the killing of harmful animals like snakes, scorpions and ferocious animals is permitted when they cause danger.

## **Article 166**

Zebh of livestock and farm animals like cow, sheep and camel has no problem in the state of Ihram.

## **Article 167**

Hunting sea animals is permitted for Muhrim.

## **Article 168**

A specific atonement had been defined for killing any desert animals. But because today this act is not common, we abstain from mentioning that matter in order not to lengthen the discussion.

# **25. Carrying weapons**

## **Article 169**

A Muhrim should not carry weapons with himself/herself even if they are cold weapons or firearms, but it is a precaution not to use defensive weapons like shield etc. But in the cases of necessity, danger and fear from thieves, ferocious animals and enemies, using any necessary weapon is permitted.

## **Article 170**

The thing, which is Haraam, is to carry the weapon like having a sword on the waist or having a gun on the shoulder or carrying it by hand. But if these are placed in the house, tent or trunk of a car of a Muhrim then it does not harm his/her Ihram although it is a mustahab precaution to abstain from that except in the case of necessity.

## Article 171

Whenever a Muhrim carries a weapon deliberately, then the atonement of this act is one sheep as a precaution.

## 26. Atonements of Ihram

### Article 172

Atonements of Ihram are as follows:

- 1- Atonement of wearing a sewn dress deliberately or necessity is one sheep and it has no atonement if it is performed because of ignorance or forgetfulness.
- 2- Wearing a shoe that covers the entire top of the foot and wearing socks is not permitted for men, but it has no atonement even if it is performed deliberately.
- 3- Atonement of covering the head deliberately is one sheep for men as obligatory precaution; it has no atonement in the case of ignorance or forgetfulness.
- 4- Atonement of covering the face is one sheep for women as a Mustahab precaution.
- 5- Atonement for cutting one of the nails deliberately is one portion of food (approximately 750 gram) and if a Muhrim cuts all the nails of both hands or the nails of hands and feet in one session, then the atonement is one sheep. But if a Muhrim cuts the nails of hands in one session and feet in another session then the atonement is two sheep, and there is no atonement in the cases of forgetfulness and in the cases of necessity it is obligatory precaution to pay the same atonement.
- 6- Atonement of going under the shade deliberately or in the case of necessity is one sheep for each Ihram; it means that one sheep is for Ihram of Umrah and one sheep for Ihram of Hajj and there is no atonement for involuntary cases or the cases of forgetfulness and ignorance.
- 7- Atonement of shaving the hair of the head or armpits (both or one of them) deliberately is one sheep, but a Muhrim can choose from one sheep, three days of fasting or feeding six needy persons (two portion of food for each) for shaving the head in case of necessity, and it is an obligatory precaution to pay the same atonement for removing hair of armpits; but the atonement of removing some hair of the head, face, beneath the chin or armpit is feeding one poor person. But there is no atonement for cases of ignorance about the matter or forgetfulness.

8- Performing marriage for a Muhrim himself/herself or reciting the marriage statement for the others have no atonements.

9 & 10 & 11- Whenever a Muhrim looks or touches his/her spouse with sexual desire, then the atonement is one sheep, and if ejaculation occurs by this act then the obligatory precaution is to pay the atonement of one camel and if a Muhrim kisses his/her spouse then one camel is obligatory even if ejaculation occurs or not.

12- Atonement of sexual intercourse is of different types, which has been mentioned in articles "150, 151, 152 & 153".

13- Atonement of masturbation is like sexual intercourse.

14- Atonement if killing insects is some food as obligatory precaution, even if it is performed deliberately or not.

15- Atonement of lying, insulting and priding is Istighfar (asking forgiveness from Allah)

16- Atonement of false swearing for the first time is one sheep, and if it is true then atonement is one sheep if it is said three times, and there is no atonement for less than three times.

17- Atonement of carrying weapon/s deliberately is one sheep as obligatory precaution.

18- Atonement of using fragrance is one sheep as obligatory precaution.

19- Applying kohl has no atonement, unless it has a fragrance that in this case it has the atonement of using fragrance.

20- Looking at the mirror has no atonement, but it is Mustahab to say Labbayk after looking at the mirror.

21- Wearing ornaments is Haraam but does not have atonement.

22- If there is fragrance in applying oil on the body, then the atonement is one sheep, although it is performed because of necessity.

23- Extracting blood from the body has no atonement.

24- Atonement of tooth extraction is one sheep as Mustahab precaution.

25- There is no atonement for cutting the plants of Haram, except Istighfar.

# Tawaf

## Article 173

Second obligatory act of Umrah is Tawaf; Tawaf is circumambulating the house of Allah (seven rounds) and it is obligatory in both Umrah and Hajj (one time in Umrah and two times in Hajj).

## Article 174

There are five acts in Tawaf that should be done:

### First: “Niyah” (intention)

Because Tawaf is one of the worships and it is not correct if done without the intention of closeness to Allah.

### Second: “Purity of Hadath”

That means having ablution and being pure of Janabah (sexual intercourse or discharge of semen) and menstruation and Nifas (lochia) , and this should be considered for obligatory Tawaf and Taharah (purity). However it is not the condition for Mustahab Tawaf, although it is better to be pure and if a person is in the state of Janabah and has forgotten that, then his/her Mustahab Tawaf is correct, but if the person is aware, then Tawaf is not correct, because it is Haraam that a person to be in Masjid al-Haraam in the state of Janabah.

## Article 175

Whenever a person does not have access to water or using water could be harmful for him/her, then this person can perform Tayammum (dry ablution) instead, even if it is Tayammum instead of Ghusl (full ablution) or ablution for prayer, and performs Tawaf after that.

## Article 176

Whenever a woman is in her menstruation period and cannot perform Tawaf and the prayer of Tawaf with purity before Wuquf in Arafat, then she should return to Hajj al-Ifrad and after completing Hajj, she should perform Umrah al-Mufradah with purity, even if menstruation occurs before Ihram or after that, and the ruling for woman after childbirth is the same. But women can delay menstruation by using pills and perform Tawaf of Hajj and Umrah.

## **Article 177**

Whenever a person is performing Tawaf and his/her ablution becomes invalidated then this person should renew the ablution and return to the tawaf. If the person has passed four rounds then he/she can continue, and if it was less than four rounds then Tawaf should be performed again, and if menstruation occurs for a woman during Tawaf, the ruling is the same after getting pure.

## **Article 178**

If a person leaves an obligatory Tawaf because of necessity for himself/herself or one of religious brothers or sisters then he/she should act according to the past article.

## **Article 179**

If a person gets ill during Tawaf in the way that cannot continue and complete Tawaf, he/she can leave Tawaf and if four rounds has been completed then he/she performs the rest and if was less than four rounds then Tawaf should be performed again, and if illness continues and the person cannot continue by himself/herself, then some persons can carry him/her for performing Tawaf and if it is not also possible, then the person should take a proxy for performing Tawaf.

## **Article 180**

Whenever a person leaves a Mustahab Tawaf (even for a necessary reason or not), then he/she can continue from the place that he/she has been, if the person has performed four rounds or not.

## **Article 181**

Sitting has no problem, during Tawaf, for removing tiredness, but it is obligatory precaution to observe the conventional sequence (it means to perform Tawaf without long pauses and in sequential rounds).

**Third: Taharah from impurities.**

## **Article 182**

The body and clothes of a person who performs Tawaf should be pure of any impurities in both obligatory and Mustahab Tawaf, even some of impurities which has been forgiven for prayer (like blood spot smaller than a one dirham coin) should not be on the body or clothes of the person during Tawaf, but if washing the blood of injuries causes strong discomfort, then Tawaf could be performed with that.

## **Article 183**

There is no problem if small parts of clothes (like socks, hat and coins bag which are not enough for covering private parts) are impure.

## **Article 184**

In the condition that a person does not know that the body or clothes are impure or he/she knew that but has forgotten, and finds out after Tawaf, his/her Tawaf is correct. However if he/she finds out during Tawaf, then clothes should be changed and if there is no clean and pure cloth available then clothes or the body should be washed in order to be pure and Tawaf should be continued from the place and this Tawaf is correct, even it has been paused before the completion of fourth round.

### **Fourth: Circumcision.**

## **Article 185**

Tawaf of an uncircumcised man is not correct and an obligatory precaution is that children should be also circumcised for performing Tawaf.

## **Article 186**

Whenever a person performs Tawaf without circumcision, deliberately or because of ignorance or forgetfulness, then his Tawaf is invalidated.

## **Article 187**

Whenever an adult has not been circumcised and gains the ability of performing Hajj (like people who are newly converted), should perform Hajj in that year if he can be circumcised. But if he cannot do it, then he should delay his Hajj until he is circumcised, and if circumcision is harmful for him, then he should perform Hajj in that condition (but it is Mustahab precaution to take a proxy for performing Tawaf in behalf of him adding to his own Tawaf).

### **Fifth: covering the private parts.**

## **Article 188**

Covering the private parts is obligatory for performing of Tawaf and it is necessary for him/her to cover his/her body in the way that not to be called naked.

## **Article 189**

It is an obligatory precaution to observe all condition of clothes of a performer of prayer for Tawaf.

# **Obligatory acts of Tawaf**

## **Article 190**

Seven things are obligatory in Tawaf:

### **First and Second**

Tawaf should be begun from al-Hajar al-Aswad (the black stone) and should finish at al-Hajar al-Aswad. It is enough that beginning and finishing is accepted by the normal place from al-Hajar al-Aswad, and it is not necessary to notice in part of body to be parallel to the parts of al-Hajar al-Aswad, but it is obligatory precaution to start Tawaf a little before al-Hajar al-Aswad and finish it a little after al-Hajar al-Aswad in order to be sure about performing seven complete rounds.

### **Third**

It is obligatory to perform Tawaf in the way that the Kaa'ba is at the left side of the body as is common among Muslims, and Tawaf on the upper levels of Masjid al-Haraam is not free of problem in other than the cases of necessity.

## **Article 191**

It is not necessary that the left shoulder always be parallel to the Kaa'ba and it is enough if the pilgrim circumambulates normally. If sometimes he/she faces Ka'ba and then continues the round it has no problem, and it is not necessary to perform the thing which others do that is the left shoulder should always be parallel to Ka'ba (even when they reach Hijr Ismael). This act has no necessity of performance, and even if it is vilified, their Tawaf has problem. It is better that they have the presence of heart (getting rid of all secular problem and only think of Allah) and pray to Allah and circumambulate Ka'ba like other Muslims instead of these unnecessary observations about the left shoulder to be always parallel to Ka'ba.

### **Fourth**

It is obligatory to include Hijr Ismael into Tawaf, which means to perform Tawaf of Hijr Ismael from outside and if someone performs Hijr Ismael from inside then he/she should not count that round and



begin from al-Hajar al-Aswad (but because in these cases returning back is not possible because of congestion of people, then it is better that performer continues with other people and completes that round without intention and when he/she reaches al-Hajar al-Aswad makes intention and begin the next round).

## **Fifth**

Tawaf should be performed out of the house of Ka'ba. Tawaf inside Ka'ba is not permitted. Also it is not permitted to perform Tawaf on that part of side of Ka'ba which is called Shadherwan (although today Shadherwan has been made in the way that practically Tawaf is not possible on that) and it is not permitted to go on the wall of "Hijr Ismael" and perform Tawaf.

## **Article 192**

Putting the hand on the wall of Ka'ba or the wall of Hijr Ismael or on the al-Hajar al-Aswad does not harm Tawaf, but the Mustahab precaution is to abstain from putting the hands on the wall of Ka'ba on the side which Shadherwan is placed.

## **Article 193**

If a person enters the Ka'ba during Tawaf then his/her Tawaf is invalidated and he should redo it, and whenever one performs Tawaf from inside of Hijr Ismael then that round should be performed again from al-Hajar al-Aswad is, as has been said before. But if someone performs on the wall of Hijr Ismael or Shadherwan then only that distance should be retaken.

## **Article 194**

Whenever one leaves Tawaf deliberately but does not go out of the mosque and returns before that sequence is completed and continues from the place that he/she had left, then this Tawaf is correct.

## **Sixth**

It is famous among Faqihs that Tawaf should be performed in the distance between the Maqam Ibrahim and the house of Ka'ba (it is less than thirteen meters) and this distance should be observed from each side.

Therefore, the Tawaf zone is less than three and a half meters in the side of Hijr Ismael, because the size of Hijr Ismael is ten meters and it subtracts from the whole distance.

But it was so much better that Tawaf could be performed in all parts of Masjid al-Haraam although it is better to observe the precaution. It means that if performing Tawaf in the defined distance is not hard

then the Muhrim does not go out of that zone; and performing Tawaf in upper levels is not free of problem in other than necessary cases.

## **Seventh**

Sequence is one of the conditions of Tawaf; it means that the performer should circumambulate seven complete rounds around the house of Ka'ba. Less than seven rounds is not enough, but as we said before, sequence is not one of the condition of a supererogatory Tawaf.

## **Article 195**

Whenever the time of obligatory or supererogatory "Vitr" prayer comes during obligatory Tawaf, then the performer can leave Tawaf, perform the prayer and then return and continue the rest of Tawaf, only if it is before the completion of four rounds or after that.

# **Rulings of Tawaf**

## **Article 196**

Increasing or reducing the number of rounds of Tawaf is not permitted. If a person adds something to seven rounds deliberately, then his/her Tawaf is invalidated, and if a person reduces obligatory Tawaf deliberately, he/she can return and continue if the sequence has not been passed, unless Tawaf is invalidated and should be performed from the beginning.

## **Article 197**

If a person leaves obligatory Tawaf incomplete involuntarily or because of ignorance, he/she can return and complete Tawaf if four rounds have been completed before (if sequence has been passed or not) and if four rounds have not been completed before, then the performer can complete them, unless he/she should start from the beginning.

## **Article 198**

Conditions for the person who leaves "Tawaf of Umrah al-Tamattu":

1- Whenever he/she leaves Tawaf deliberately and no time will remain for Wuquf in Arafat, then obligatory precaution is to make intention of Hajj al-Ifrad and after completing Hajj performs Umrah al-Mufradah, and performs Hajj al-Tamattu' the next year (as precaution, the time for Wuquf (staying) in

Arafat is from noon of the day of Arafa, which is the ninth of Dhu'l-Hijjah until the sunset).

2- If a person leaves Tawaf because of ignorance, then his/her Hajj converts to Hajj al-Ifrad, and as an obligatory precaution he/she should perform Umrah al-Mufradah and perform Hajj al-Tamattu' the next year, and it is Mustahab precaution to sacrifice one camel as the atonement.

3- If a person leaves Tawaf because of forgetfulness, his/her Hajj is correct, and can perform Tawaf whenever he/she remembers that (and it is Mustahab precaution to perform Sa'y again after that). If he/she has returned to the homeland or is out of Mecca and returning causes him/her trouble, then this person can take proxy to perform Tawaf and nothing is Haraam for him/her (from Haraam acts of Ihram) in this time and it is precaution to send a sheep for sacrifice to Mecca and if it is not possible, then sacrifice should be done in his/her town.

4- If a person leaves "Tawaf of Hajj" until the end of Dhu'l-Hijjah, his/her Hajj is invalidated if this has been done deliberately and Hajj should be performed again the next year, and if it has been done because of ignorance also Hajj is invalidated (if the person is guilty about that or not) and it is precaution to sacrifice a camel adding to performing Hajj in the next year. If it has been done involuntarily and because of forgetfulness, then performing Tawaf and Hajj is correct, and if he/she remembers that after returning from Hajj or going out of Mecca and returning to Mecca causes trouble for him/her then this person should take a proxy for performing Tawaf (and it is Mustahab to perform Sa'y after that and sacrifice a sheep in Mena and if was not possible sacrifice in his/her town and nothing is Haraam for him/her).

5- If a person leaves "Tawaf of Nisa'" woman is Haraam for him if he had done it deliberately or because of ignorance or forgetfulness, until he returns and performs Tawaf, and if this person dies then his "guardian" performs Ghazaa of Tawaf, and if several Tawafs of Nisa' is on him, performing only one of them is enough; and there is no difference in this ruling, which is renouncing Tawaf of Nisa', between man and woman and children, because Tawaf of Nisa' is necessary for everyone and spouse does not become Halaal without that.

## **Reducing or Increasing Tawaf**

### **Article 199**

Whenever a pilgrim reduces the number of Tawaf deliberately and sequence passes then Tawaf is invalidated and Tawaf should be performed again, but if he/she compensates that amount before passing the sequence then Tawaf is correct; and it is possible to stop Mustahab or obligatory Tawaf and start it again from the beginning.

## **Article 200**

Whenever a pilgrim performs Tawaf more than seven rounds deliberately then Tawaf is invalidated, even if he/she had the intention of doing this from the beginning or makes the intention of adding something after that, and even this amount is one round or more or less, but if this added distance has been included without the intention of Tawaf, for example going the first round with crowds in order to be familiar with Tawaf and start it from al-Hajar Al-Aswad, then this act has no problem.

Also there is no problem if the pilgrim cannot leave the place because of congestion of people after completing Tawaf and walk a distance with crowd without the intention of Tawaf.

## **Article 201**

Whenever a pilgrim performs Tawaf more than seven rounds involuntarily, if the added amount is less than one round then he/she stops that and Tawaf is correct, and if this is one round or more then obligatory precaution is to add next round to it until completing another seven round with the intention of closeness to Allah, and then this pilgrim performs two Rak'ats prayer of obligatory Tawaf and then performs another two Rak'ats prayer for Mustahab Tawaf after Sa'y (when Sa'y is obligatory). It is necessary to define that first one is obligatory and the other is Mustahab, it is enough to perform that with the intention of closeness to Allah.

## **Article 202**

“Qiran” in Tawaf (that means performing two Tawafs one after the other without performing the prayer of Tawaf between them) is Haraam in obligatory Tawaf, but the first Tawaf is not invalidated, unless he/she had the intention such an act from the beginning that in this case the correctness of Tawaf is not free of problem; but Qiran in Mustahab Tawaf is Makrooh, but it is not Haraam or invalidated.

## **Article 203**

Whenever a pilgrim reduces an amount from Tawaf involuntarily then he/she should act as in article 197.

## **Doubt in Amount of Tawaf**

## **Article 204**

Doubt after completing Tawaf in the amount of rounds or in conditions of Tawaf like performing ablution or other acts correctly, should be ignored.

## **Article 205**

Whenever a pilgrim has doubt after reaching al-Hajar Al-Aswad that did he/she perform seven rounds or eight rounds or more, he/she should ignore that doubt and Tawaf is correct; also if during the rounds he/she has doubt that if this is the seventh or eighth round or more than that, this doubt should be ignored and after finishing that round Tawaf is correct.

## **Article 206**

Whenever a pilgrim doubts about performing less than an amount in obligatory Tawaf (like the doubt between six and seven or five and six etc.) it is obligatory precaution to leave that Tawaf and restart if from the beginning (this is for obligatory Tawaf), but in Mustahab Tawaf he/she can consider it as the lesser number and Tawaf is correct.

## **Article 207**

Assumption and guessing is the same as doubt in past issues and should be acted as the rulings of doubt.

## **Article 208**

There is no problem in relying on a friend for counting the rounds of Tawaf (if that person is a reliable person).

## **Article 209**

A doubtful person (a person who has lots of doubts in Tawaf) should ignore his/her doubts, and take the number which is more appropriate for him/her, for example this person should take six between five and six, and take seven between seven and eight.

## **Article 210**

Talking, laughing and even eating something do not invalidate Tawaf, but it is better not to say a thing other than prayers to Allah (in Mustahab or obligatory Tawaf) and to perform this great worship with presence of the heart and abstain from doing anything that reduces presence of the heart.

# Prayer of Tawaf

## Article 211

It is obligatory for a pilgrim to perform a two Rak'ats prayer after performing Tawaf, and the obligatory precaution is to perform it behind the Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.), and it is not necessary to be connected to that, only if it is performed in a place that people says it is behind Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) that is enough.

## Article 212

As it has been said before, the place for performing the prayer of Tawaf is behind Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.), but if the pressure of crowd is too much then it can be performed on the sides of Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) or in a distance behind that (especially when there are lots of Tawaf performers in the way that they reach behind Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) and performing prayer becomes hard in that place, in this situation the pilgrim should not insist on performing the prayer close to Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) and should perform in a place that has no problem, and the acts of some of commons that they take the hands of others in order to secure a place for performing prayer is not necessary, but if this act causes trouble for Tawaf performers then it is not free of problem).

## Article 213

The prayer of Mustahab Tawaf can be performed anywhere in Masjid al-Haram and the rule of Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) is not the condition.

## Article 214

The prayer of Tawaf can be recited with a loud or low voice and it doesn't have Azan (also Adhan) and Iqama. It is similar to the dawn prayer; but it is obligatory precaution not to perform this prayer in congregation.

## Article 215

Whenever a pilgrim does not perform the prayer of Tawaf deliberately, then he/she should return and perform it and if he/she does not perform the prayer of Tawaf in the proper time, then Tawaf is not invalidated, and he/she has only performed a sin.

## **Article 216**

Whenever a person renounces the prayer of obligatory Tawaf involuntarily or because of forgetfulness or ignorance about the matter, he/she should return and perform the prayer behind Maqam of Ibrahim (a.s.) if it is possible, and if this causes him/her trouble then this prayer should be performed anywhere even in the homeland, and if this person dies without performing the prayer of obligatory Tawaf, his/her guardian performs that in behalf of that person (and it is also enough that another person performs this prayer for him/her).

## **Article 217**

Whenever a pilgrim forgets to perform the prayer of Tawaf and is performing Sa'y between Safa and Marwah and remembers the matter in that condition, he/she should leave the Sa'y, return and perform the prayer of Tawaf and then return to Sa'y and continue it from the place that he/she was.

## **Article 218**

It is an obligatory precaution to perform the "prayer" of Tawaf immediately after performing "Tawaf", unless the performer forgets that and its ruling has been said before.

## **Article 219**

"Tawaf" and "prayer of obligatory Tawaf" can be performed anytime in night and day; even it has no duress to perform this prayer in the time of sunrise or sunset.

## **Article 220**

Whenever a person cannot perform the prayer of Tawaf immediately after Tawaf because of the presence of an obstacle like invalidation of ablution for prayer, impurity of the body or clothes or congestion of crowds for performing daily congregation prayers, then he/she should perform it after that obstacle has removed and both "Tawaf" and "its prayer" are correct.

## **Article 221**

It is obligatory for any Mukallaf (accountable; a Muslim who has reached the age of puberty) to learn the recitation of the prayer; it means that he/she recites Hamd and Sura and other recitations of the prayer correctly, but if this person couldn't learn that completely after necessary tries because of illiteracy or other reasons, that amount which he/she can recite is enough, but if it is possible for him/her to learn but he/she does not try because of lack of concern then he/she is performing a sin; but if there is not enough time for learning then he/she should perform as much as he/she has learned and it is not necessary to

take a proxy, and performing the prayer of Tawaf in congregation has problem.

## **Article 222**

If a person doesn't know about the error of his/her recitation and this person is not guilty about the matter, then the prayer is correct and should not be performed again; but if he/she is guilty about the matter he/she should perform the prayer again after correcting the recitation, unless he/she has performed a sin.

## **Article 223**

All prayers should be performed with the correct recitation and pronunciation and pilgrims to the house of Allah should use this opportunity, when they decide to perform this great spiritual journey, to recite their prayers correctly for knowledgeable people and remove any errors in order to perform a Hajj free of problems.

## **Article 224**

Attention and cares of scholars of Tajwid (proper pronunciation during recitation) are not necessary, and it is enough if people say that it is a correct recitation according to common Arabic pronunciation.

# **Mustahab Tawafs**

One of the strong affirmed Mustahab acts for people who are in Mecca is Tawaf of the house of Allah that is seven rounds like obligatory Tawaf and a two Rak'ats prayer, performed after that, but it does not include Sa'y of Safa and Marwah.

And this one best worships and it has been mentioned in a Hadith from Imam Sadiq (a.s.) that: "There are 120 divine mercies around Ka'ba, out of which half of that is for the ones who perform tawaf and another forty are for those who perform prayers and other twenty are for people who looks at Ka'ba".<sup>1</sup>

A person can perform this Tawaf on behalf of friends (dead or alive) who are not in Mecca and it is more preferred than several Umrahs that people perform with the intention of Rija' (hoping for the goodness of the act) .

Mustahab Tawaf is similar to obligatory (Wajib) Tawaf but it differs that in the following items:

1- Purity (Taharah) is not a condition of Mustahab Tawaf, although it is better to perform it with ablution.



However ablution is necessary for the prayer of Tawaf.

2- The prayer of Mustahab Tawaf can be performed anywhere in Masjid al-Haram.

3- Observing the sequence is not necessary in Mustahab Tawaf.

4- Stopping Mustahab Tawaf is permitted without any excuse or necessity, although the person does not want to perform other rounds. But it is obligatory precaution not to stop obligatory Tawaf except the cases of necessity.

5- Doubt about the deficiency of rounds of Mustahab Tawaf is not important and the lesser round could be considered.

6- Qiran (performing two Tawaf after each other immediately, without performing the prayer of Tawaf between them) is not permitted in obligatory Tawaf but it is Makrooh (disliked) in Mustahab Tawaf.

7- Stopping Mustahab Tawaf is permitted in other than the cases of necessity, and it can be continued later from the place that is stopped though it is not necessary to pass the fourth round.

It is better to abstain from performing Mustahab Tawaf when lots of people are performing obligatory Tawaf and crowd is heavily congested. It is better to leave the place of Tawaf for people who are performing obligatory Tawaf.

Mustahab Tawaf has no specific time and can be performed at anytime of the day or night. Also it has no specific numbers for performing but each Tawaf should be performed seven rounds.

Mustahab Tawaf does not need Ihram clothing. Keeping silent or talking or reciting prayers are permitted during that like obligatory Tawaf, although it is better to recite prayers or pray to Allah.

It is not a good act to recite the prayers with the loud voice in the way that it causes distraction for others.

---

1. Wasael al-Shi'aa, vol. 9, page 398.

## Sa'y of Safa and Marwah

## **Article 225**

Sa'y of Safa and Marwah is one of the obligatory acts of "Umrah al-Tamattu'" and "Hajj". It means shuttling between these two small hills, the pilgrim goes from "Safa" to "Marwah" and returns from "Marwah" to "Safa" until seven rounds are completed (shuttling from one to another is considered as one round). Therefore, the pilgrim goes from Safa to Marwah four times and returns three times from that and does not return the fourth time and it becomes seven rounds in this way.

## **Article 226**

Whenever a person renounces all of the seven rounds or a part of it deliberately, and if this person is performing Umrah al-Tamattu', and cannot compensate that before Wuquf to Arafat, it is obligatory precaution to convert the Hajj to Hajj al-Ifrad, it means that this person should make the intention of Hajj al-Ifrad and completes the rituals of Hajj, and the next year should perform Hajj al-Tamattu' again. If a pilgrim renounces Sa'y in Hajj deliberately and cannot compensate that in time, then his/her Hajj is invalidated and should be performed the next year again.

## **Article 227**

If a person renounces Hajj because of ignorance about the matter, it is obligatory precaution to act to the ruling of renouncing deliberately as it has been mentioned in the previous article; but if a pilgrim forgets to perform Sa'y, then he/she should return and perform that whenever he/she remembers, although it is after the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah, and if returning causes him/her trouble, he/she can take a proxy for performing Sa'y in behalf of the him/her, and nothing is Haraam (from Haraam act of Muhrim) for him/her in this time.

## **Article 228**

Whenever a pilgrim performs more than seven rounds deliberately with the intention of obligatory Sa'y, then this Sa'y is invalidated and if the pilgrim adds one or more or less than one round to Sa'y involuntarily and then remembers later, he/she need not pay attention to that and his/her Sa'y is correct, and there is no need to complete the added amount up to seven rounds, but it is a precaution not to do this act.

## **Article 229**

Whenever a pilgrim adds an amount to the seven rounds because of ignorance about the matter, it's ruling is similar to performing it deliberately; it means that he/she should perform Sa'y again.

## **Article 230**

Whenever a pilgrim reduces a round from Sa'y because of forgetfulness, and if this has happened before four rounds are completed and then he/she remembers and performs that reduced round, then his/her Sa'y is correct. If this person has gone out of Mecca or has returned to the homeland and returning to Mecca causes him/her trouble, then he/she should take a proxy for performing Sa'y and it has no atonement, although he/she has performed acts that are Haraam for a Muhrim.

## **Article 231**

Whenever a pilgrim assumes that he/she has completed the Sa'y before Taqsir, he/she should not suffice to this assumption and investigate and if he/she does not remember, then he/she should perform the amount which is not sure about performing that; and if this person performs Taqsir (cuts the hair of the head and the nail) with the assumption of completing Sa'y without the investigation and performs sexual intercourse with his/her spouse it is obligatory precaution to sacrifice a cow (sacrifices in Mecca if it is possible and if it is not possible then sacrifices in the hometown) adding to completing the Sa'y.

## **Article 232**

Whenever a person is performing Sa'y of Safa and Marwah, and the time of prayer comes, this person should leave Sa'y, perform the prayer and return and complete the rest of Sa'y.

## **Article 233**

Whenever a necessary need happens for the pilgrim or one of religious brothers and sisters, then this pilgrim can stop Sa'y and go to fulfill the need and continue Sa'y after returning from the place that he/she has stopped and his/her Sa'y is correct. And if a person gets tired, he/she can sit between Sa'y and stands up after the rest and continue Sa'y (if it is in Safa, Marwah or between these two).

## **Article 235**

It is a precaution to observe the sequence in Sa'y except the cases which have been mentioned before, it means that the pilgrim should perform seven rounds sequentially and without interruption.

# **Obligatory Acts of Sa'y**

## **Article 236**

Some obligatory things in Sa'y:

First: Niyah (intention) – it is obligatory that the pilgrim performs “Sa'y” with “intention” for the satisfaction of Allah, and as much as he/she knows what is he/she doing and it is for Hajj or Umrah then it is enough, and it is not necessary to say it in words.

Second: Sa'y begins from “Safa”

Third: finishes at “Marwah” (as it has been mentioned before, Safa and Marwah are two small hills near Masjid al-Haram and when a pilgrim exits Masjid al-Haram he/she sees “Safa” in the right side and “Marwah” in the left, therefore Hajji first goes to Safa and begins Sa'y from there).

Going from Safa to Marwah is considered as one round and returning from that is considered as another round, therefore the seventh round ends in Marwah.

## **Article 237**

The pilgrim should go the whole the distance between these two hills and it is enough to go through the slope because today a part of hillside has been covered and there is no need to reach the bare part of the hill and place his/her foot on that place, and perform some vilifying acts of some of commons.

Fourth: Sa'y of Safa and Marwah should be performed in seven complete rounds, nothing more and nothing less, and if the pilgrim increases or reduces it deliberately then his/her Sa'y is invalidated and if this has happened involuntarily then he/she should complete that before that sequence passes in the case of reducing, and increasing it involuntarily has no problem.

Fifth: Sa'y of Safa and Marwah should be performed in its normal way, therefore if a part of it is performed from inside Masjid al-Haram or the outer places then this Sa'y is not correct; also performing Sa'y in the upper level which has been made nowadays and is upper than Safa and Marwah is a problem, unless there is a strong necessity and performing from the grounds could not be possible, in this case Sa'y from the upper level is permitted.

Sixth: It is obligatory to face Marwah when proceeding to it and to face Safa in returning to that hill, and if a person performs this contrarily and place his/her back to Marwah during going to that and goes backward or in right or left hand, then it has problem. It is enough for a pilgrim to shuttle in a normal way, although he/she sometimes turns his/her head to right or left or for observing other companions sometimes looks back.

Seventh: It is obligatory precaution in order for correctness of Sa'y, that the personal clothes and stuff of the pilgrim be not usurped; also covering private parts for men and religious veil for women is a precaution.

## Article 238

It is not necessary to perform Sa'y immediately after Tawaf and its prayer, but it can be delayed until the night because of tiredness or heat of the weather. Also it is permitted without tiredness or heat of the weather, but delaying until the next day is not permitted without any necessity. If a person delays Sa'y until the next day he/she has performed a sin but his/her Sa'y is not invalidated.

## Mustahab Acts of Sa'y

### Article 239

The following acts are Mustahab in Sa'y:

1- It is better to have ablution during Sa'y, but it is not obligatory. Even women can perform Sa'y of Safa and Marwah during their menstrual period. Even Sa'y during sleep doesn't have problem (for example a pilgrim is sitting on a cart and performing Sa'y and he/she goes to sleep for a while performing).

2- It is Mustahab to place a hand on "al-Hajar al-Aswad" or kissing that after Tawaf and its prayer if the crowd is not congested and goes for Zamzam water and drinking from it and pouring some water on his/her head and body and then goes for Sa'y, but if kissing "al-Hajar al-Aswad" causes trouble for others because of congestion of the crowd, this act should not be performed.

3- Sa'y can be performed on foot or ride, if the person is healthy and capable of walking or ill and weak, but it is better for people who can walk to perform Sa'y by walking.

4- It is Mustahab to perform "Harwala" (jogging) at the time of reaching the marked place during going from Safa to Marwah or returning to that, but if this act causes trouble for the pilgrim he/she can renounce that.

Performing Harwala is not Mustahab for women and if men forget to perform that, it is precaution not to return for performing.

5- Talking and even eating and drinking is permitted during Sa'y, but it is better to pray to Allah in this state and perform Sa'y with dignity and noticing to the pure essence of Allah.

### Article 240

Resting during Sa'y of Safa and Marwah has no problem because of tiredness or something else, if it is

in Safa, Marwah or between these two, but it is better not to sit and rest without being tired,

## **Article 241**

If a person doubts after completing Sa'y and performing Taqsir that he/she performed seven complete rounds in Sa'y or have all conditions been observed or not, he/she should not pay any heed, but if this doubt comes before Taqsir then he/she should perform Sa'y again from the beginning, but if he/she knows that he/she has performed seven rounds and has doubt about more than that, he/she should not pay any attention on this doubt and the Sa'y is correct.

## **Article 242**

Whenever a person doubts that the Sa'y is incomplete, for example six rounds or less, this person should return and complete the amount that has not been performed from the Sa'y and his/her Sa'y is correct.

# **Taqsir**

## **Article 243**

Fifth obligatory act of Umrah is Taqsir, which means cutting the hair of the head or the face (beard or mustache) and cutting a part of the nail, and it is enough to cut the hair of the head or the face and forgo cutting the nail, but it is a precaution not to suffice cutting the nail solely.

## **Article 244**

Cutting the hair of the head or the face can be performed with any tool, but tweezing is not enough.

## **Article 245**

Taqsir is part of worship and should be performed with the intention and for closeness to Allah.

## **Article 246**

There is no specific place for Taqsir in Umrah al-Tamattu', therefore the pilgrim can perform Taqsir in Marwah after completing the Sa'y or do it after returning home, and also there is no difference between cutting the hair by the pilgrim himself/herself or asking someone else to do.

## **Article 247**

Shaving the head instead of cutting the hair is not permitted in “Umrah al-Tamattu”, and if this act has been performed deliberately in the month of Dhu'l-Qa'dah or after that, then the atonement is one sheep, but it has not been performed deliberately then there is no atonement for that.

## **Article 248**

After a Muhrim comes out of Ihram after performing Taqsir in “Umrah al-Tamattu” all Haraam act of Muhrim becomes Halaal for the person, except hunting which is still Haraam for that person, because hunting of Haram is Haraam for everyone.

## **Article 249**

Whenever a pilgrim forgets to perform Taqsir and goes for Hajj (it means that wears Ihram and goes to Arafat) his/her Umrah and Hajj is correct and there is no compensation, but it is better to pay the atonement of one sheep.

## **Article 250**

If a person does not perform Taqsir deliberately and goes for the rituals of Hajj, his/her Umrah is invalidated and his/her Hajj converts to Ifrad, then he/she should complete the Hajj and it is obligatory precaution to perform Umrah al-Mufradah after the Hajj and his/her Hajj is correct, although it is Mustahab for him/her to perform Hajj again in the next year.

## **Article 251**

If a person does not perform Taqsir because of ignorance about the matter, then his/her ruling is similar to renouncing deliberately.

## **Article 252**

Tawaf of Nisa' is not obligatory in Umrah al-Tamattu', even there is no necessity for performing Tawaf of Nisa' with the intention of Rija' (hoping for the goodness of the act).

# Hajj al-Tamattu

## Article 253

As we have mentioned before, Hajj al-Tamattu' should be performed after Umrah al-Tamattu' and it has thirteen acts as follows:

- 1- Wearing Ihram from Mecca.
- 2- Wuquf which means staying in "Arafat" from about the noon until the sunset of the ninth day of Dhu'l-Hijjah.
- 3- Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haraam; it means to stay there from the dawn until the sunrise of Eid of Qurban (festivity of sacrifice).
- 4- Going to Mena (also Mina) and performing Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba (throwing seven pebbles to the place, which is allocated at the end of Mena that is called "al-Jamarah al-Aqaba or al-Jamarah al-Uula).
- 5- Sacrificing in Mena in the day of Eid (tenth of Dhu'l-Hijjah).
- 6- Taqsir that means shaving the head or cutting a piece of hair or nail.
- 7- Tawaf of Ka'ba (this Tawaf is called Tawaf of pilgrimage).
- 8- Performing two Rak'ats of prayer of Tawaf.
- 9- Seven times of Sa'y,(shuttling) between Safa and Marwah.
- 10- Performing another Tawaf, that is called Tawaf of Nisa'.
- 11- Performing Two Rak'ats of prayer of Tawaf of Nisa'.
- 12- Staying the eleventh and the twelfth nights in Mena.
- 13- Performing Triple Ramy al-Jamarat that means throwing seven pebbles to each of three places, which are situated in Mena in the eleventh and the twelfth days.

Explanation of each one of these acts will be mentioned in following articles.



# **Wearing Ihram from Mecca**

## **Article 254**

It has been mentioned before that the Miqat of Ihram for “Hajj al-Tamattu” is “Mecca”, and there is no difference between places in Mecca. It is enough to be performed from Masjid al-Haraam, other mosques, streets and avenues or houses and there is also no difference between old and new Mecca, even places which have been advanced today to Mena and Arafat, it is possible to wear Ihram from all of these places. But it is obligatory precaution not to wear Ihram from places of Mecca which are farther than “Masjid al-Tan’eem” (Masjid al-Tan’eem is the closest boundary of Haram) and the best place is Masjid al-Haraam.

## **Article 255**

The best time for wearing Ihram is the eighth day of Dhu’l-Hijjah, but it is possible to do this three days before and go to Mena from there in order to go to Arafat from that place; Old and ill persons can move to that place sooner than this time if they are afraid of congestion of crowd.

## **Article 256**

The latest time of Ihram of Hajj is the time when delaying causes impossibility of reaching Wuquf to Arafat which is from the noon of the ninth day until the sunset; therefore, the pilgrim can become Muhrim in the morning of the ninth day and go to Arafat on time (if it is possible to reach on time in that conditions).

# **Wuquf in Arafat**

## **Article 257**

The second act of obligatory acts of Hajj is Wuquf in Arafat. “Arafat” is a desert about 20 km from Mecca which has become semi-treed today and it is obligatory for Hajjis to stay at the noon of the ninth day of Dhu’l-Hijjah in that place.

## **Article 258**

It is a precaution to remain from the beginning of noon of the ninth day until the sunset in Arafat, afoot or ride, moving or sitting, awake or partly sleep, and it is Mustahab to pray and observe the pure essence of Allah and asking forgiveness from him in that time, The superiority of praying in this place and time is unequaled

## **Article 259**

Wuqf in Arafat is worship and should be performed with intention of closeness to Allah, and its intention has no specific statement and having the intention of performing that in the heart is enough.

## **Article 260**

If a person leaves Arafat before sunset, and if it is because of forgetfulness or ignorance about the matter, then there is nothing on him, but if has done this deliberately, then this person should sacrifice a camel in Mena (and if he/she cannot sacrifice a camel, then he/she should perform eighteen days of fasting) and his/her Hajj is correct.

## **Article 261**

Whenever a person returns to Arafat before the sunset and stay until sunset in there and then leaves the place, there is no atonement on him in this case.

## **Article 262**

Although staying in Arafat is obligatory all the time as has been mentioned before, renouncing it is a sin, but it is not one of essentials of Hajj, and the pillar is staying for a while in there. It means that if a person stays a part of the time from noon until sunset in Arafat, then his/her Hajj is correct, but if he/she stays away the whole time then the Hajj is invalidated.

## **Article 263**

It is obligatory for a person who has not been successful in completing Wuqf in Arafat from noon until sunset, to stay there for some time in the night of Eid. Therefore, when a pilgrim reaches Arafat when people have left there, he/she should stay a part of the night in there on the condition that he/she can reach Mash'ar al-Haram before the dawn of the day of Eid and this is called "Emergency Wuqf of Arafat". However if this person couldn't stay a part of night in Arafat, it is enough for him/her to perceive Wuqf a part of Wuqf in Mash'ar al-Haram, which will be mentioned later, and his/her Hajj is correct in this way.

# Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haraam

## Article 264

Mash'ar al-Haraam which is also called "Muzdalifah" and "Joma" is a famous place between Mena and Arafat (its boundaries are the mount Ma'zmein and Hiyadh and Wadi Mohassar) and it is obligatory for those who to go to that place after Wuquf in Arafat and it is precaution not to delay going to that place if it is possible.

## Article 265

Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haraam is obligatory from the dawn until sunrise and it is also an obligatory precaution to stay the night there and pray to Allah and it is obligatory to have the intention of closeness to Allah for all of these acts.

## Article 266

Leaving Mash'ar without any religious lawful excuse and going to Mena because of ignorance has no problem, but if a person performs this act deliberately, then he/she should pay one sheep as the atonement, but his/her Hajj is correct.

## Article 267

Wuquf in Mash'ar al-Haram is a pillar of Hajj and if a person renounces that deliberately, then his/her Hajj is invalidated.

## Article 268

Although staying all the time between the dawn and the sunset in Mash'ar al-Haraam is obligatory (and even staying the night of Eid is also obligatory as a precaution), but staying the night solely is enough for the correctness of Hajj, but as we said before if this act has been performed deliberately, it is a sin and has the atonement of one sheep.

## Article 269

It is allowed for the below listed to stay a while in Mash'ar and then go to Mena.

- 1- Women
- 2- Ill persons

3- Old men

4- All persons who have an acceptable excuse

Therefore, all people who have an excuse can stay a part of the night in Mash'ar and then depart for Mena; so old men, ill persons, children and all those who have to accompany them for nursing or guidance and those who are afraid of congestion of the crowd in the morning of the Eid can go to Mena in the night (after staying a while in Mash'ar al-Haraam and pray to Allah) and perform Ramy al-Jamarat al-Aqaba; but it is Mustahab precaution not to leave Mash'ar before midnight, and it is precaution that guides return to Mash'ar after taking people who are in their charge if it is possible.

## **Rulings of Wuqf in Arafat and Mash'ar**

### **Article 270**

As it has been said before, each of the Wuqufs in "Arafat" and "Mash'ar" are of two kinds:

1- Voluntary Wuqf 2- Emergency Wuqf

"Voluntary Wuqf of Arafat" is from about the noon until the sunset.

"Emergency Wuqf of Arafat" is some time, even a short time, of the night of the Eid.

"Voluntary Wuqf of Mash'ar" is from the dawn until the sunrise of the day of the Eid.

"Emergency Wuqf of Mash'ar" is from the sunrise until the noon of the day of the Eid.

Albeit "Mash'ar" has another emergency Wuqf which is for women and weak and ill persons and it is staying a part of the night of Eid and departing there for Mena. Here, we explain the rulings of persons who perceive all of these kinds of Wuqufs or some of them.

1- If a person performs both Wuqufs in Arafat and Mash'ar voluntarily (which is from the noon until the sunset of the day of Arafat in Arafat, and from the dawn until the sunrise in Mash'ar al-Haraam), surely his/her Hajj is correct.

2- A person who does not perform any of voluntary or emergency Wuqufs of Arafat and Mash'ar which has been mentioned before, his/her Hajj is invalidated and should make the intention of Umrah al-Mufradah, it means that he/she should perform Tawaf and prayer and Sa'y with the Ihram that he/she has and perform Taqbir (also performs Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer as a precaution) and comes out of Ihram, but this person should perform Hajj al-Tamattu' again the next year.

3- Hajj is correct and free of problems by performing “emergency Wuquf of Arafa” and “voluntary Wuquf of Mash'ar” (it means that he/she has not reached Arafa in the ninth day and he/she has only stayed a part on the night in there, then he/she has stayed in Mash'ar al-Haraam from the dawn until the sunrise).

4- Hajj of a person is correct if he/she has performed “voluntary Wuquf of Arafa” and “emergency Wuquf of Mash'ar” (it means that this person had been stayed in Arafat from the afternoon until the sunset of the day if Arafa, but he/she had not stayed in Mash'ar after the dawn until the sunrise because of a reason, but he/she had stayed a part of the noon in Mash'ar).

5- Hajj of a person who has performed only “voluntary Wuquf of Arafat”, by any reason, is correct (it means that he/she has been stayed from the afternoon until sunrise of the ninth day in Arafat, but he/she couldn't stayed even a while in Mash'ar after the noon of the Eid).

6- Hajj of a person who has performed only “voluntary Wuquf of Mash'ar” is also correct (it means that he/she had never reached Arafat, but had stayed in Mash'ar from the dawn until the sunrise).

7- A person who has performed “emergency Wuquf of Arafat” in the night of the Eid and “emergency Wuquf of Mash'ar” before the noon of the day of the Eid, deserves that his/her Hajj to be correct.

8- If a person has only performed “emergency Wuquf of Mash'ar” (it means that he could only reach Mash'ar al-Haraam before the noon of the day of the Eid), then his/her Hajj is invalidated and should make the intention of Umrah al-Mufradah and comes out of Ihram after performing the rituals of Umrah al-Mufradah, and this person should perform Hajj al-Tamattu' again the next year.

9- The Hajj of a person who has only performed “emergency Wuquf of Arafat” is also invalidated and should act according to the previous ruling.

10- The Hajj of a person who has performed none of the voluntary or emergency Wuqufs is also invalidated and should act according to the previous ruling.

## **Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba**

### **Article 271**

The fourth obligatory act of Hajj is “Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba”, on the day of Eid of Qurban (festivity of sacrifice). The meaning of this is to throw seven pebbles to a place which is placed at the end of Mena in the side of Mecca that is called “al-Jamarah al-Aqaba”

## Article 272

There are some things obligatory in Ramy "al-Jamarah":

- 1- Having the intention of closeness to Allah, and it is enough to have the intention in the heart that he/she has the intention of throwing seven pebbles to the Jamarah for obeying Allah and performing rituals of Hajj and it is not necessary to say this intention by words.
- 2- The pilgrim should use seven pebbles (not being very large and not being very small, it is enough that each of them to be in size of a finger nail).
- 3- Pebbles should be hurled one by one and throwing two pebbles together is considered as throwing only one.<sup>1</sup>
- 4- Pebbles should strike Jamarah and if there is a doubt in this matter, it is not enough and the act should be performed again.
- 5- Pebbles should be hurled not being placed in the place of Jamarah and it is not enough that pebbles strike Jamarah with assistance of other person or thing (for example if a pilgrim throws a pebble and this pebble strikes Jamarah by assistance of other pebble which has been hurled by another person, then this is not enough).
- 6- The time for performing the throwing of the pebbles is from sunrise until sunset of the day of the Eid, but as we said before "women" and "old men" and those who are afraid of the congestion of the crowd can perform Ramy al-Jamarah at the night of the Eid.
- 7- Pebbles have three conditions:  
  
"First", they should be stone, not clod or clay or anything else.  
  
"Second", they should be collected from "Haram" (attention that all of Mash'ar al-Haraam and Mena are placed in Haram but Arafat is out of Haram), but it is better to collect the pebbles from Mash'ar al-Haraam in the night of the Eid, also collecting from "Mena" and "Mecca" has no problem.  
  
"Third", pebbles should be untouched; it means that nobody or even the pilgrim himself/herself had not used them for Ramy al-Jamarat before.

Therefore, pebbles which are fallen around Jamarah and have been used cannot be used for Ramy al-Jamarat. But if the pilgrim sees pebbles in other than that place and doubts that if these have been used or not, he/she can use them.

It should be considered that 49 pebbles are needed for three days (and if the pilgrim has to stay the thirteenth day then he/she needs 70 pebbles) that is better to collect them in the night of the Eid from

Mash'ar and bring them in a bag with himself/herself, but it is better to have some more pebbles because it is possible that some of them may not strike the Jamarah.

## **Article 273**

It is an obligatory precaution not to collect the pebbles from mosques in there.

## **Article 274**

Ramy al-Jamarah can be performed ride or afoot, with the right or the left hand, also there is no specific method for throwing them and having ablution is not a condition, although it is better to perform Ramy al-Jamarah afoot with ablution and with the right hand, and in that state it is better to praise and pray to Allah.

## **Article 275**

Performing Ramy is not permitted in the night, except for women and ill persons and those who are afraid of the congestion of crowd in the day, or people who are busy in days managing and arranging the tasks of Hajjis in caravans (there is no difference in performing Ramy in the night before or after).

## **Article 276**

Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba and other Jamarat can be performed from any side, although it is famous that it is Mustahab to stand back to Qibla and facing Jamarah when performing Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba, but it is Mustahab to face the Qibla in performing Ramy of other Jamarat.

## **Article 277**

Whenever a pilgrim doubts about the number of pebbles which have been hurled, he/she should take the lesser number and perform the rest, and if he/she is sure about performing less than seven, he/she can perform the rest if the sequence has not been past and if it has been passed it is precaution to perform the rest and then perform it again by other seven pebbles.

## **Article 278**

Whenever a person renounces Ramy al-Jamarah because of forgetfulness or ignorance about the matter, it is necessary to perform that whenever he/she remembers or informed about the matter until the thirteenth day, and it is better to perform the Ghazaa of the previous day before the noon and the duty of that day in afternoon; but it has no problem to perform them both in one time (first the Ghazaa of the previous day and then the duty of that same day).

## **Article 279**

If a pilgrim finds out that he/she had not performed Ramy al-Jamarah after returning to Mecca from Mena, he/she should return to Mena and perform that, and if the thirteenth day has passed he/she should perform that in the next year in the same days or if it is not possible, he/she should take a proxy for performing that.

## **Article 280**

If a person renounces Ramy al-Jamarah deliberately, his/her Hajj is not invalidated but he/she should act according to the previous article.

## **Article 281**

The sequence of Jamarat should be observed in the eleventh and twelfth days which Ramy of all three Jamarat is obligatory; it means that the pilgrim should perform Ramy first on the place of "Jamarah al-Uula", then "Jamarah al-Wusta" and after that the "Jamarah al-Aqaba" which is the last Jamarah (this is for the eleventh and the twelfth day; but in the tenth day which is the day of the Eid only Ramy al-Jamarah al-Aqaba is performed).

## **Article 282**

Whenever sequence has not been observed in Ramy al-Jamarat, the pilgrim should return and perform it in the way that sequence is observed, but if he/she has hurled four pebbles or more to each Jamarah, he/she returns and performs the rest sequentially, and if he/she has not hurled four pebbles, then he/she should return and perform from the beginning and throw seven pebbles, and if he/she has missed three pebbles or less from one of Jamarat, he/she should complete only that Jamarah and there is nothing else obligatory for him/her in this matter.

## **Article 283**

If the pilgrim has not observed the sequence deliberately, it is obligatory precaution to return and perform that from the beginning and there is no difference between four pebbles or less.

## **Article 284**

It is obligatory to observe the "sequence without interruption"; it means that the pilgrim should hurl the pebbles sequentially and with a little pause between them to the place of Jamarah, but as we said before, if a pilgrim has hurled four pebbles or more to the Jamarah sequentially and has renounced the rest because of forgetfulness or ignorance about the matter, then he/she can hurl the rest in another



time although the sequence has been passed.

## Article 285

As it has been mentioned before those who cannot perform Ramy in the day because of an excuse should perform it in the night, and if they are incapable of performing it in the night or there is fear of a danger or harm, they should take a proxy to perform Ramy in behalf of them in the day.

## Article 286

Today, upper levels have been constructed for Jamarat, and it seems that performing Ramy from the upper level also suffices and it is enough when pebbles are hurled into the holes around the Jamarah and falls on the ground.

---

1. According to lots of great scholars and scientist of literature, Jamarah means “مجتمع الحصى” which means the place of collection of pebbles or according to the owner of Jawahir Jamarah is the place of Jimar (pebbles) and it is understood from several cabbalas that Jamarah is the same land which pebbles are thrown to that and it seems that pillar are placed there as signs, therefore it is not necessary the respected Hajjis trouble themselves to throw the pebbles to pillars, but it is enough to throw the pebbles to the circle around the pillar and it is enough if pebbles strike the pillar and fall at the base; but bearing this hardness is not necessary and if they perform Ramy from the upper level, throwing the pebbles to the holes which are placed in upper level and then pebbles fall of the ground from there is enough.

# Sacrifice

## Article 287

The second obligatory act of Mena is sacrifice and camel is the best for this purpose and its middle is a cow and the least of that is a sheep and this is obligatory for only those who are performing Hajj al-Tamattu' and it is not obligatory for the others.

## Article 288

It is an obligatory precaution that a sacrifice to be only for one person even in the cases of necessity; and if some persons are capable of sacrifice only one animal, then it is a precaution to perform fasting, which will be mentioned later, added to sacrifice; but it has no problem to sacrifice only one animal for a group of people in Mustahab sacrifices like the Eid of Qurban even they are seventy persons.

## **Article 289**

It is better to perform Zebh (ritual slaughter) in the day of the Eid but it is permitted to delay that until the thirteenth day.

## **Article 290**

If a pilgrim delays the sacrifice because of an excuse or without any excuse and deliberately, it is obligatory to perform that until the end of Dhu'l-Hijjah and if he/she doesn't perform that, then he/she should take a proxy to perform this act in the next year in the days of Eid in the same place.

## **Article 291**

The animals of sacrifice should have the following conditions:

First condition: The Camel should be at least 5 years old, cow 2 years old and the sheep should be at least one year old for sacrifice as an obligatory precaution.

Second condition: Its eye should be healthy and its ear should not be cut and its feet should not be crippled (little crippling has no problem). Its inner horn should not be broken, but there is no problem if its outer horn is broken.

## **Article 292**

Whenever a part of the ear of the animal has been cut or punched as a sign, it has no problem.

## **Article 293**

If a type of that animal is naturally without ear or tail or horn, then there is no problem.

## **Article 294**

A castrated animal is not permitted for sacrifice; but if it's balls are ground or its vessel is disabled then there is no problem.

## **Article 295**

The animal should not be thin and it suffices if people say that it is not thin, and it is enough if it seems thin but there is some fat on its kidney.

## **Article 296**

The word of the seller of the animal can be accepted about the age of that animal or not being castrated or other hidden matters which buyer cannot recognize.

## **Article 297**

If a person buys an animal that seems to be fat, and recognizes that it is thin after the Zebh or after paying the price and before performing Zebh, this sacrifice is correct. Also, if a pilgrim buys an animal assuming that it is thin and it clears later that the animal is fat then this sacrifice is correct.

## **Article 298**

Whenever a pilgrim buys an animal which seems to be healthy and it clears after the Zebh or paying the price that the animal has a defect then the pilgrim can suffice this animal, although Mustahab precaution is not to suffice that animal.

## **Article 299**

It is Mustahab to divide the meat of the sacrificed animal to three parts. Take one third of that for themselves, give one third as alms in the way of Allah and give one third of that to friends and believers as a gift; but giving a part of that meat to poor people is obligatory while eating from that meat is not obligatory.

## **Article 300**

If people who deserve this meat cannot be found in Mena, then the Hajji can bring the meat out of Mena and even out of Hejaz and give that to the poor Muslims. Although it is according the precaution to take the deputyship from some of people who deserve or believers for accepting the share of poor people or the gift of believers and leaving that sacrifice there, but it is not obligatory.

## **Article 301**

It is not necessary that three shares be specifically equal.

## **Article 302**

It is a precaution not to take the meat of sacrifice out of Mena while there are needy persons in there, and if there is no poor person in there then it is permitted to take the meat out of Mena.

## **Article 303**

Meat of the sacrifice can be given to all poor Muslim consisting of Shiites and Sunnis, but giving it to non-Muslim people or Nasibis (those who hate Ali (a.s.) and are the enemies of his holiness and his followers) is a problem.

## **Article 304**

If a pilgrim does not find an animal of sacrifice until the time of return, but has the money of sacrifice, he/she can give the money to a reliable person in order to buy a sheep until the end of Dhu'l-Hijjah and sacrifice that in behalf of him/her in Mena and if it is not possible perform it in Mecca, and if it is not possible perform it in the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah of the next year and if the pilgrim cannot find a reliable person in there he/she can ask some of Hajjis to buy and sacrifice in behalf of him/her in the next year.

## **Article 305**

It is a precaution not to sell the skin of the sacrificed animal and if he/she want to keep it for himself/herself must give an equal amount of money to a poor person.

## **Article 306**

Sacrificing in the places for sacrifice is enough, although today it is common that all of them are out of the Mena region and it is not necessary to sacrifice in a corner of Mena hidden or leave it for the next days.

## **Article 307**

Muslims should do something in order that meat of sacrificed animals to be used and not be buried or burned because of uselessness or corruption, because this acts are Israaf (wasting), Haraam and is against the Islamic orders. And if there is no person in Mena who deserves this meat, then Hajjis should take the meat out to other cities or countries and give it to poor people and believers and if this act has costs, these costs should be paid by the Islamic governor or people.

## **Article 308**

Using machineries for Zebh has no problem if the conditions of Islamic Zebh are observed like being to Qibla and saying "بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ" being faced to Qibla and saying

## **Article 309**

If there is no way found for using the meats of sacrificed animals, and pilgrims are forced to destroy the meat or an important part of them, then sacrifice should be stopped temporarily in Mena and Hajjis should keep the money in order to sacrifice in their towns after returning and act as its order; If the authorities of reliable organizations can accept to perform the Zebh of all animals of sacrifice there and send the meat to the deprived people of other regions, it is better to perform sacrifice in the available places for sacrifice, although these places are out of Mena.

## **Article 310**

In the assumption of the previous article sacrifice should be performed in the rest of Dhu'l-Hijjah and if the return takes more time then he/she should take a proxy. And if is not possible in the Dhu'l-Hijjah of that year, it should be performed in the days of Eid of Qurban in the next year.

## **Article 311**

Sacrifice can be performed by the Hajji himself/herself or by a proxy and in any way Hajji makes the intention and there is no need that proxy should be known completely, only knowing him/her as a whole is enough. Also it is not necessary for the person who performs sacrifice to be Shiite, but all person whom their sacrificed animal is pure and Halaal, can perform Zebh, although it is better for a person who performs sacrifice to be Shiite.

## **Article 312**

It is not necessary that the proxy say the name of a person who are performing Zebh in behalf of him/her (although saying the name is better), even if this person says the name of another person erroneously, then it has no problem and sacrifice is performed for the main person.

# **Taqsir**

## **Article 313**

It is obligatory that the Hajji cuts a part of his/her hair of the head or shaves the head and it is his first Hajj then it is better to shave the head, but it is not obligatory. He/she comes out of Ihram by this act, it means that wearing sewed clothes and other Haraam acts of Ihram become permitted for him except fragrance and women that will become Halaal in the next acts (as will be mentioned).

## **Article 314**

It is an obligatory precaution for those who have tied their hair or have stuck the hair with some materials to shave the head and it is Mustahab precaution to shave the head for those who are performing Hajj for the first time, but it is permitted to only suffice to cutting a part or shortening the hair of the head; and he has choice between these two acts for the next times; although shaving the head is for men and women are not permitted to shave their heads and only cutting a part of the hair of the head is obligatory.

## **Article 315**

Cutting the nail is good with the cutting of the hair from the head for men and women; but it is obligatory precaution not to suffice to cutting the nail alone.

## **Article 316**

It is obligatory to perform the triple acts of Mena in sequence. This means that first– Ramy al–Jamarah al–Aqaba, second– sacrifice and third– shaving the head or cutting a part of the hair of the head and nail. Whenever a pilgrim performs these acts without observing the sequence because of ignorance or forgetfulness then his/her acts are correct, even if he/she does not observe that deliberately, he/she has performed a sin but there is no atonement. Delaying shaving the head or cutting the hair of the head or the nail has no problem until the twelfth day, but it is a precaution not to perform these acts in the night.

## **Article 317**

It is obligatory to perform shaving or shortening of the hair of the head before Tawaf of Hajj, and if a pilgrim performs Tawaf of Hajj before Taqsir deliberately, then he/she should perform Tawaf after Taqsir again and pay the atonement of one sheep; but if he/she has performed Tawaf before Taqsir because of ignorance or forgetfulness then it has no atonement, but it is obligatory precaution for him/her to perform Tawaf after Taqsir again.

## **Article 318**

It is not necessary that the Hajji himself/herself shortens his/her hair of the head and it is enough if he/she orders another person to do that, if that person is Shiite or Sunni and in any way he/she himself/herself should make the intention that for example “I perform the obligatory act of Taqsir for Hajjat al–Islam for closeness to Allah (قربة الى الله)”.

## **Article 319**

It is obligatory to perform shaving or shortening the hair of the head in Mena and if a person does not perform that deliberately or because of ignorance or forgetfulness, it is obligatory for him/her to return to Mena and perform this duty. And if he/she cannot return or it causes severe hardship for him/her, then he/she should perform that anywhere that he/she is; and it is an obligatory precaution to send his/her hair to Mena and it is Mustahab to bury the hair in Mena.

## **Article 320**

It is not permitted for those who have not performed Taqsir yet and are still Muhrim to shave the head of another person or shorten his/her hair, but they should perform Taqsir first and then they can do it for the others.

## **Article 321**

A person who knows that if he/she shaves his/her head, he/she might get injured, then it is a precaution to cut a part of the hair first and then shave the head.

# **Quintet Obligatory Acts of Mecca**

## **Article 322**

It is obligatory for a Hajji to return to Mecca after performing triple acts of Mena in order to perform the rest of ritual of Hajj which are five things as follows:

- 1- "Tawaf of Hajj" that is also called "Tawaf of pilgrimage".
- 2- "The prayer of Tawaf of pilgrimage".
- 3- "Sa'y of Safa and Marwah".
- 4- "Tawaf of Nisa"
- 5- "The prayer of Tawaf of Nisa".

These five acts should be performed exactly as we have said before for Umrah al-Tamattu' except for intention that is here the intention of Tawaf of Hajj and its prayer and its Sa'y or the intention of Tawaf of

Nisa' and its prayer.

## **Article 323**

A Hajji can go to Mecca in the day of Eid of Qurban immediately after performing the acts of Mena and performs the above acts in there in that day. And it is better not to delay it to after eleventh day and if this happens, then no longer than the thirteenth day. If it is not impossible to perform these acts until the end of Dhu'l-Hijjah, although it is Mustahab precaution not to delay after the thirteenth day.

## **Article 324**

Acts of Mecca which are Tawaf of pilgrimage and prayer and Sa'y and Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer should be performed after the acts of Mena, but those who can perform them before going to Arafat are;

- 1- Women who have the fear of involving with menstruation of childbirth and cannot stay until they become pure.
- 2- Ill persons who are not capable of performing Tawaf and Sa'y in the congestion of the crowd.
- 3- Old men and women who are incapable performing these acts when returning from Mena because of congestion of the crowd or fear of danger or harm.
- 4- All persons who know that they are incapable of performing these acts after returning or performing these acts causes them lots of troubles (and there is no difference between Tawaf of Nisa' and Tawaf of Hajj in this matter).

## **Article 325**

In case of performing these acts before the acts of Mena, it is an obligatory precaution to become Muhrim to the Ihram of Hajj and then performing the acts.

## **Article 326**

If an ill person becomes healthy or a woman gets pure after returning from "Mena" and are capable of performing Tawaf and Sa'y then it is obligatory precaution to perform them again.

## **Article 327**

Tawaf of Nisa' is obligatory for man, woman, old and young, married and single and even discriminator or neutral children, and without that woman does not become Halaal for man and man does not become Halaal for woman; and it is obligatory precaution that if a person brings a non-discriminator child then



his/her guardian performs Tawaf of Nisa' with him/her.

## **Article 328**

Tawaf of Nisa' is not an obligatory Umrah of Hajj al-Tamattu', but it is obligatory in Hajj al-Tamattu' and Umrah al-Mufradah.

## **Article 329**

If a woman is in menstruation before performing Tawaf of Nisa' and cannot stay until becoming pure (for example when caravan does not wait for her) it is necessary to take a proxy for performing Tawaf of Hajj and its prayer, and then she performs Sa'y and after that takes a proxy for performing Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer (also other persons who are not capable of performing Tawaf and Sa'y, should take a proxy).

## **Article 330**

Tawaf of Nisa' cannot be performed immediately after Tawaf of Hajj and before Sa'y, but it should be performed after performing Sa'y; but if a person performs that before Sa'y because of ignorance about the matter or forgetfulness, then it is correct.

## **Article 331**

The things which were Haraam for Hajji in the state of Ihram become Halaal by performing the triple acts of Mena and acts of Mecca in three stages:

- 1- All Haraam things become Halaal after cutting or shaving the hair of the head, except fragrance and spouse.
- 2- Fragrance becomes Halaal after performing Tawaf of pilgrimage and the prayer of Tawaf and Sa'y of Safa and Marwah.
- 3- Spouse becomes Halaal after performing Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer.

## **Staying the Night in Mena (Baytuta in Mena)**

## **Article 332**

It is obligatory for Hajji to stay the eleventh and twelfth night in Mena (and in some cases the thirteenth night is also obligatory) and if he/she stays in any other place in these two night then the atonement is one sheep and it is obligatory to pay the atonement of one sheep for each night.

## **Article 333**

It is enough to stay half of the night, if it is first or the second half.

## **Article 334**

It is possible that a Hajji returns to Mecca after the middle of eleventh night for performing the acts of Mecca or returns to Mecca in the day of the Eid after performing the acts of Mena and returns to Mena until the midnight.

## **Article 335**

Baytuta in Mena also needs to have the intention for closeness to Allah like other acts of Hajj, and it is enough to have in the intention of staying the night in Mena for performing Hajj al-Tamattu' from Hajjat al-Islam or Mustahab Hajj in the heart.

## **Article 336**

Whenever a person abstains from performing Baytuta in Mena inevitably or because of an emergency or necessity then there is no sin considered for him/her and also there is no atonement and his/her Hajj is correct.

## **Article 337**

Some types of people are exempt from staying performing Baytuta in Mena:

- 1- Old men and women and ill persons and their nurses whose staying in Mena causes them severe hardness.
- 2- Authorities and servants of caravans in the case that they have to return to Mena for arranging the issues of pilgrims.
- 3- Those who have fear of danger or harm among the congestion of the crowd when returning.
- 4- People who are busy all the night performing Tawaf of other worships in Mecca and do not perform

any act other than their necessities.

5- Those who have come to Mecca for performing the rituals of Mecca and will return to Mena before the dawn.

## **Article 338**

Performing Baytuta in the hillsides around Mena (especially in congestion of the crowd) has no problem (also in the hillsides around Mash'ar in the time of Wuquf in Mash'ar at the night of the Eid, but it has problem to stay in the hillsides of the mount "Ma'zmein" which is situated at the beginning of Mash'ar and it is out of the zone of Mash'ar, except the cases of necessity of congestion of the crowd).

## **Article 339**

Three types of people should stay the thirteenth night in Mena and perform Ramy of triple Jamarat (as obligatory precaution):

- 1- A person who has hunted an animal in the state of Ihram
- 2- A person who has performed sexual intercourse with his/her spouse.
- 3- A person who does not depart from Mena in the twelfth day until the sunset.

Staying the third night in Mena is obligatory in these three conditions, and in other than that the pilgrim can return to Mecca in the twelfth day.

## **Article 340**

Returning from Mena should be after the Azan of noon in the twelfth day, but those who depart there in the thirteenth day can return before Azan of noon.

# **Ramy al-Jamarat in the Eleventh and Twelfth Days**

## **Article 341**

As it has been mentioned before, one of the obligatory acts of Hajj is Ramy of triple Jamarat in the

eleventh and twelfth days in the way that has been explained.

## **Masdood and Mahsoor (People who have been prevented from performing ritual of Hajj or Umrah because of an Obstacle)**

### **Article 342**

“Masdood” is a person who is prevented of performing the rituals after the Ihram of Umrah or Hajj by another person (enemy of government agents), and “Mahsoor” is a person who cannot perform the rituals of Hajj or Umrah because of illness.

### **Article 343**

Whenever a person who is Muhrim to Ihram of “Hajj” or “Umrah” and an enemy or other persons like government agents or thieves or other than them prevent him/her from going to Mecca, and there is no other way of going to Mecca or this pilgrim cannot afford to pay the fare of that way, then he/she should sacrifice an animal in there and come out of Ihram. It is a precaution to shorten the hair of the head, and if there is no possibility of performing sacrifice in that place, he/she makes the “intention” of coming out of Ihram and it is a precaution to perform fasting for ten days instead of sacrifice (in the way that will be mentioned in the “article 347” and if he/she couldn’t perform in that way, then he/she perform it after he/she return to his/her hometown).

### **Article 344**

Being Masdood happens by being prevented of going to Mecca, or coming to Mecca and being prevented of performing all of the acts of Hajj because of going to jail or any other cause, or by being prevented of Wuquf in Arafat and Mash'ar. But if a pilgrim is prevented of performing the acts of Mena then he/she should take a proxy for performing Ramy and sacrifice, and then shave the hair of the head or shorten it and come out of Ihram and perform the other acts of Mecca personally; and if this pilgrim has performed Wuqufs and is prevented only from the rituals of Mena and Mecca, he/she takes a proxy for performing Ramy and sacrifice and then perform Taqsir personally, and after that takes a proxy for performing the acts of Mecca.

And in all of these conditions his/her Hajj is correct and comes out of Ihram, unless in the case that

he/she is prevented of entering Mecca or performing the Wuquf of Arafat and Mash'ar or, this person is prevented of performing the acts that Hajj is invalidated when a person does not perform them (even involuntarily); in this case if he/she has the ability of performing Hajj before or his/her ability remains until the next year, then Hajj is obligatory for him/her, unless it is not obligatory for this person.

## **Article 345**

“Mahsoor” is a person who cannot perform the rituals of Hajj and Umrah because of illness or injury or fracture of bones or like them, and has four conditions:

1- If a pilgrim is a Muhrim to Ihram of Umrah al-Mufradah but he/she has to return to his/her home because of illness, or similar problem and is not capable of performing the acts of Umrah al-Mufradah, then this person should send the money for sacrifice to Mecca and arrange with his/her friend for performing sacrifice for him/her in a specific time and date in Mecca, and then he/she performs Taqsir in that specified time and comes out of Ihram, and everything becomes Halaal for him except women until that he becomes healthy and performs Umrah al-Mufradah. If he/she became healthy but couldn't perform Umrah al-Mufradah then he/she sends a proxy, and if there is no person for performing sacrifice for him/her, sacrifice in the place that he/she is in and comes out of Ihram, and even if it is not possible, then the sacrifice is made after returning to the hometown and action is done according to above order.

2- Whenever a person is a Muhrim to Ihram of “Umrah of Hajj al-Tamattu’”, acts like the previous article (as obligatory precaution) and if his/her Hajj is obligatory then he/she should perform it again the next year.

3- Whenever a person becomes Muhrim to Ihram of Hajj al-Tamattu’ (from Mecca) and cannot perform any of the Wuqufs of “Arafat” or “Mash'ar” because of obstacles, then he/she should send the money for sacrifice by one of his/her friends to Mena in order to sacrifice for him/her in the day of the Eid (or after that until thirteenth day) and perform Taqsir in the time that has been arranged with his/her friends, and he/she comes out of Ihram and everything becomes Halaal for him except women (as obligatory precaution). He should perform Hajj in the next year in order that it becomes Halaal for him, or performs Umrah al-Mufradah before the time of Hajj of the next year, or if it is not possible then he should send a proxy. This person should perform Hajj again in the next year if Hajj has been obligatory for him/her in that time.

4- Whenever he/she performs one of two Wuqufs, his/her Hajj is correct and should perform the rest of the acts as much as he/she can and takes a proxy for performing the other acts that he/she could not perform.

## **Article 346**

Whenever a person become healthy and can reach Hajj and perform at least one of two Wuqufs, then he/she should go and perform the rest of the rituals, too.

# **Miscellaneous Issues of Hajj**

## **Article 347**

It is obligatory for a person who does not have either the sacrifice or it's money, to perform ten days of fasting, three days sequentially in the days of Hajj (seventh and eighth and ninth of Dhu'l-Hijjah) and seven days after returning home. If he/she could not perform fasting in the seventh day, he/she should do that in the eighth and ninth days after each other and one day after the thirteenth day, and these three days should be in the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah (and being in travel in not a obstacle for performing fasting in this condition), but he/she can perform other seven days in other months, sequentially or separated.

## **Article 348**

Whenever a person perform Umrah al-Tamattu' and comes out of Ihram and wants to abstain from doing the rituals of Hajj, he/she has performed no sin if this is because of illness or another obstacle, and if it is the first year of his/her ability of Hajj, it is clear that he/she has not been able of performing Hajj, and if Hajj has been obligated for him/her before then he/she should perform Hajj al-Tamattu' completely in the next year.

But if the pilgrim abstain from performing Hajj without any excuse then he/she has performed a sin (if has is obligatory or Mustahab) and there is nothing else on him/her and should perform the obligatory Hajj in the next year and it is obligatory to perform Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer any way.

## **Article 349**

Killing a bee and other insects like a fly or mosquito is not permitted in the state of Ihram (as obligatory precaution) and if the pilgrim kills that insect deliberately, then he/she should pay the atonement which is some food (for example one loaf of bread to a poor person) but it these insects causes him/her harm or disturbance then killing them is permitted and has no atonement.

## Article 350

It is obligatory for a person who performs Umrah al-Tamattu' to stay in Mecca and complete the rituals of Hajj (if Hajj is Mustahab or obligatory) and he/she can go out of Mecca only if he/she is sure that he/she can return and perform Hajj. Therefore going to close places like the cave of Hira and like that, which do not cause trouble in performing Hajj, has no problem.

Also servants of caravans and others can go to Jeddah, Medina or other places for performing necessary tasks, on condition that they are sure that they can return on time for performing the rituals of Hajj. And it is an obligatory precaution for them to become Muhrim to Ihram of Hajj when they want to leave and remain Muhrim until performing the acts of Hajj; but if this act causes severe hardship then they can leave without Ihram.

## Article 351

Whenever a person goes out of Mecca for performing a task after completion of Umrah, Ihram is not obligatory for him/her if he/she returns in the same month (for example the pilgrim performs Umrah al-Tamattu' in the beginning of Dhu'l-Qa'dah and depart Mecca for Jeddah or other places and return in the same month of Dhu'l-Qa'dah), but he/she should become Muhrim if he/she returns in the next month and performs Umrah again and this will be considered as his/her Umrah al-Tamattu' and it is precaution to perform a Tawaf of Nisa' and its prayer for the previous Umrah.

## Article 352

Being in a roofed vehicle in the city of Mecca in the state of Ihram has no problem (in day or night) but it is better to observe the precaution in the place that is out of Haram (that side which is beyond Masjid al-Tan'eem).

## Umrah al-Mufradah

### Article 353

Umrah al-Mufradah is one of the best acts and has lots of superiorities and it has been quoted from holy prophet (s.a.) that:

”الْعُمْرَةُ كَفَّارَةٌ لِكُلِّ ذَنْبٍ”

*Umrah is the atonement of all of the sins (and lighten the sins on the back of the human).*

## **Article 354**

Umrah can be performed in any month of the year but performing it in the month of Rajab is best of all months and it has been affirmed many times in hadeeth.

## **Article 355**

A person who is able to perform Umrah al-Mufradah, it is obligatory precaution for him/her to perform that although he/she has not the ability of performing Hajj, and it is not obligatory more than once in a lifetime. Therefore, it is obligatory precaution for those proxies who perform Hajj in behalf other persons to perform Umrah al-Mufradah for themselves.

## **Article 356**

No one is permitted to enter Mecca without Ihram by any reason and should perform Umrah al-Mufradah after Ihram, and does not come out of Ihram without that, but some groups are excluded from this ruling: Car drivers and servants of caravans and all persons who go out of Mecca (for example to Medina and Jeddah) frequently, also the person who has performed Umrah al-Tamattu' or Umrah al-Mufradah and goes out of Mecca and returns in the same lunar month, Ihram and Umrah is not obligatory for this person.

## **Article 357**

Performing Umrah is Mustahab in each month; therefore if a person enters Mecca in the end of month of Rajab and performs Umrah, he/she can perform Umrah again when the month of Sha'ban begins, but performing two Umrah al-Mufradah has problem in that same month and if a person wants to perform more than one Umrah in one month, he/she performs that with the intention of Rija', which means hoping Allah to accept that (not with the intention of an absolute order).

## **Article 358**

There are seven acts for Umrah al-Mufradah:

- 1- Ihram from Miqat.
- 2- Tawaf of house of Allah (seven rounds).
- 3- The prayer of Tawaf.



4- Sa'y of Safa and Marwah.

5- Taqsir (Shortening the hair and the nail).

6- Tawaf of Nisa'.

7- The prayer of Tawaf of Nisa'.

These acts should be performed in the way that has been mentioned in this book before for the Umrah of Hajj al-Tamattu', but with a difference in intention that is making the intention of Umrah al-Mufradah instead of the intention of Umrah al-Tamattu'.

## **Article 359**

It is possible to wear Ihram from any of famous Miqats especially "Masjid al-Shajarah" (near Mecca), and also it is permitted to become a Muhrim from "Adni al-Hal" which means the first point out of Haram, and it is better to wear Ihram from any of the following places which are famous among the people of Mecca: "Hudaybiyah", "Ji'irranah" or "Tan'eem"; but it is easier for those who want perform Umrah al-Mufradah after Hajj to go to Masjid al-Tan'eem which is currently inside Mecca and is about eight kilometers from Masjid al-Haraam, and people can go to that place with roofed car even in the day because it is in the city.

## **Article 360**

People who come from Jeddah for performing Umrah al-Mufradah should become Muhrim from Hudaybiyah (which is about 17 km from Mecca), and for those going through Medina, becoming Muhrim in Masjid al-Shajarah is the best of all.

# **Important Issues That May Happen in Hajj and Umrah**

1- Using roofed vehicles in the state of Ihram in the nights or from dawn until sunrise or completely cloudy days that shade has no use for protecting from sunlight or rain, is permitted.

2- It is not necessary that Tawaf is performed in the distance between Maqam of Ibrahim and the house of Ka'ba (about 13 meters); Tawaf is permitted in all of Masjid al-Haraam (especially at the time of congestion of the crowd) but it is better not to exceed from the foresaid distance if it is possible.

- 3– It is not necessary that left shoulder remains parallel to the house of Ka'ba all the time, but it is enough to circumambulate Ka'ba in a normal manner.
- 4– When there are lots of people performing Tawaf in the way that the crowd pushes the person forward by force it does not harm Tawaf, and it is enough to make the intention from the beginning that he/she goes among people for performing Tawaf.
- 5– The place for performing the prayer of obligatory Tawaf is behind Maqam of Ibrahim, but it can be performed more distant from there if the crowds are so much congested; the pilgrim should not insist on performing the prayer behind Maqam, specially when performers of Tawaf are so much that they reach behind Maqam of Ibrahim and some acts that others perform and disturb performers of Tawaf are not correct (but the prayer of Mustahab Tawaf can be performed anywhere in Masjid al-Haram).
- 6– Performing Sa'y of Safa and Marwah is not permitted in the upper level, unless congestion of crowd is too much that performing Sa'y in the lower level causes severe hardness.
- 7– It is enough to climb part of Safa and Marwah and it is not necessary to reach the bare part of the hill and but the feet on that part (covered ascent in Safa and Marwah is a part of the hill).
- 8– Sitting has no problem during performing an obligatory Tawaf for removing tiredness, but it is a precaution not to lose the sequence and the distance becomes very long; but sitting during performing Sa'y for removing tiredness or like that has no problem and it can be as much as it takes, if it is in Safa, in Marwah or between them.
- 9– Performing Ramy al-Jamarat (hurling pebbles to the places of Jamarat in Mena) is permitted in the upper level, and those who cannot perform Ramy in the day can perform it the night before or after that.
- 10– Performing Sacrifice is permitted in any of available places of sacrifice, although they are out of Mena.
- 11– It is better to perform Zebh (ritual slaughter) of the sacrifice in the day of the Eid, but it can be delayed until the thirteenth day.
- 12– It is not necessary for the person who performs Zebh to be Shiite, but any Muslim whom his/her sacrificed animal is pure and Halaal is permitted to perform Zebh.
- 13– Performing Zebh of animals for sacrifice, or any other purpose by steel knives of other metals is not a problem.
- 14– The pilgrim can perform Zebh on animals of sacrifice personally or give the deputyship to any reliable person, and it can be the manager of the caravan or the organizer of your Hajj or some of friends (only condition is being sure about the act of proxy). And it is not necessary for proxy to know the name of the owner of sacrifice, although saying the name is better. But it is not correct to perform sacrifice in

behalf of another person without being his/her proxy.

15- Muslims should do something that meats of sacrifice do not become corrupted or useless in order that they do not have to bury or burn those meats, because this is *israaf* (wasting) and *haraam*. If no person could be found in Mena who deserves the meat, then it is necessary to bring the meats to other Islamic countries and towns and give them to poor persons and believers and if this act has costs, these costs should be paid by Muslims and Islamic government.

16- Sacrificing should be performed in Mena until it is possible in there to prevent meats from being corrupted, but if Hajjis become sure that there is no way of using the meats of sacrifice after necessary tries and the meat will surely be corrupted, then they should stop performing sacrifice temporarily and keep its money in order to perform sacrifice in their hometowns after returning (in that month of Dhu'l-Hijjah or the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah of the next year) and then consume the meat according to the order that we have said about the meat of sacrifice.

17- Using machineries is permitted for performing sacrifice. But the conditions of Islamic Zebh like being face to Qibla and saying “بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ” and other conditions are observed (the explanation is available in the book of rulings).

18- It is better to renounce Mustahab Tawaf when the crowd is congested and leave the place for those who are performing obligatory Tawaf.

19- Miqat for the Ihram of Hajj al-Tamattu' is in Mecca and it is enough to be in any place of Mecca and there is no difference between old and new Mecca, even Ihram can be worn from places that today has been advanced to Mena, but it is obligatory precaution not to wear Ihram from places of the city of Mecca which are farther than Masjid al-Tan'eem (and are out of the zone of Haram) but the best place is Masjid al-Haraam.

20- Staff of caravans and organizations of Hajj and all persons who have performed their obligatory Hajj and performing all ritual of Hajj is hard for them can make the intention of Umrah al-Mufradah from the beginning and complete that and come out of Ihram, and after that they are free for going to Arafat and Mash'ar and Mena (without the intention) or staying in Mecca and performing their tasks.

21- Performing prayer with Ahl-e-Sunnah and attending their congregations in the days Hajj and like that, is from affirmed Mustahab acts and causes the rows of Muslims to be strengthen against enemies and it has been so much affirmed about this matter in the hadeeth of Ma'soomin (infallibles). And this prayer deserves to be sufficed as an obligatory prayer and it is not necessary to perform that again and it has no problem to follow them in the matters of time and like that and about prostration, Shiites should perform prostration on the stones of the floor of the mosque (because prostrating on all of these stones is permitted) if it is possible and if it is not, they can prostrate on the carpet; but it is not necessary to perform the prayer with their hands on the chest or saying amen after Hamd Sura.

Also, it is possible to follow them about the issue of crescent of the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah, and in the matter of the time of Iftar (breaking the fasting) for those who are in Masjid al-Haram or other mosques of them and they insist these people to perform Iftar, it is has no problem and their fasting is correct.

22- Using hand-held fans sennit mats or ordinary mats for prostration is permitted in any condition and it is not necessary to use Mohr (prayer seal) that oppositions have been sensitized about that because of false propagandas, but using Mohr has problem in some cases.

23- It is permitted to go to the cave of Hira and places like that out of Mecca after completing Umrah and before performing Hajj, but Hajjis should not go to farther places unless there is a necessity in that act.

24- Missionaries of caravans, servants and staff of Hajj organizations and bank clerks and physicians and nurses and all those who are invited to Hajj for any purpose can have the intention of performing obligatory Hajj, even if they have not gained the ability of performing Hajj yet, and in this case there is no obligatory Hajj on them.

25- It is an obligatory precaution for those who perform Hajj on behalf of another person, and this is their first year of performing Hajj, to perform Umrah al-Mufradah for themselves after completing Hajj (with Tawaf of Nisa').

26- It is an obligatory precaution that incapable persons who have to renounce some of the rituals of Hajj do not become proxy, but normal excuses which appear for ordinary people in the journey of Hajj like Tayammum (dry ablution) and Jabira (splint) and not reaching to some of voluntary Wuqufs and like them do not prevent the acts of the proxy, but he/she performs according to the order and his/her Hajj is correct. Also if a person is forced to reduce the Hajj al-Tamattu' to Hajj al-Ifrad because of the insufficiency of time, but people who are not capable of correcting their reciting of Hamd and Sura because of illiteracy or less-literacy should not accept to be the proxy, although their own Hajj is correct is the cases of necessity.

27- The proxy should perform the rituals of Hajj according to his/her own Ijtihad or Taqlid (following in religious rulings) not the Ijtihad or Taqlid of the person who has deputized him/her.

28- Travelers are free to choose between performing their prayers complete or shortened in Mecca and Medina in Masjid al-Haram and Masjid al-Nabi also in all places of Mecca and Medina and the complete prayer is better and there is no difference between old Mecca and Medina and today's cities.

29- People who have made the intention of staying in Mecca for ten days before going to Arafat, their prayer should be performed complete anywhere in Arafat, Mash'ar and Mena; and although this distance had been 4 parasang in the past but today is lesser because the advancement of Mecca.

30- Wearing Ihram is permitted from all places which are today a part of Masjid al-Shajarah and all places which today has become a part of Masjid al-Haram and Masjid al-Nabi (a.s.) has the same

ruling.

31- Shiite Hajjis and followers of the sect of Ahl –e– Bait (a.s.) should not form separate congregation prayers in groups in the days of Hajj in caravans or Masjid al–Haraam or Masjid al–Nabi, as such a prayer has a problem.

32- Pilgrims of the house of Allah should abstain from all acts that vilify the religion such as:

- a) Returning from Masjid al–Haraam and Masjid al–Nabi (a.s.) and disrupting congregation rows at the time of Azan or around that time.
- b) Trading in bazaars and streets or returning with purchased goods in these hours back to their group
- c) Congregating behind the walls of Baqi cemetery for pilgrimage of the tombs of Ma’soomin (infallibles) (a.s.) at the time of congregation prayer.
- d) Wearing unsuitable clothes which vilify the religion in front of eyes of people.
- e) Confronting violently in speech or behavior with other pilgrims of the house of Allah or habitants of Mecca and Medina.

Briefly, they should behave in the way that all people feel that they have an excellent culture because of the blessings of following Ahl –e– Bait (a.s.) and do not give any excuse to oppositions, which this act increases the benefits and blessings of their Hajj.

Allah Willing.

## **The Rites and Mustahab Acts of Hajj and Umrah**

Lots of ritual and Mustahab acts for “Hajj” and “Umrah” has been mentioned in the words of great Faqihs (Allah’s heaven be upon them) and we have brought a considerable part of them here.

But it is better to perform them with the intention of “Rija’”, which means hoping for the goodness of the act in the eyes of religion and having benefits and blessings, because some of them do not have enough proof (and we do not consider the principle of tolerance correct in the proof of traditions and Mustahab acts).

Another important point is that performing some of those Mustahab acts today, with crowd congestion, is impossible for many people. Therefore they can perform those actions which is possible, and if the Hajji wants to perform an act which is difficult to perform but have an intention of performing that, Allah will

give him/her the reward according to his/her intention as it has been mentioned in hadeeth of Ma'soomin (a.s.).

It is Mustahab for a person who intends to travel to Mecca or other places to ask Allah for goodness of the travel and prepare his/her will and pay alms in order to buy his/her health with that alms and it is Mustahab to perform four Rak'ats prayer in the home when he/she is preparing for travel and recites Hamd and "قل هو الله" Suras in each Rak'at and recite;

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَتَقَرَّبُ إِلَيْكَ بِهِنَّ، فَاجْعَلُنَّ خَلِيفَتِي فِي أَهْلِي وَ مَالِي .

And it is Mustahab to stand at the door of his/her house and recite Hamd Sura three times in front, right side and left side also Ayat al-Kursi (verse 255 of Baqara Sura) three times in the same way and says after that:

اللَّهُمَّ احْفَظْنِي وَ احْفَظْ مَا

مَعِيَ وَ سَلِّمْنِي وَ سَلِّمْ مَا مَعِيَ وَ بَلِّغْنِي وَ بَلِّغْ مَا مَعِيَ بِبَلَاغِكَ الْحَسَنِ الْجَمِيلِ

## Mustahab acts of Ihram

1- Cleaning the body and cutting the nail and shortening mustache above the lips and removing the hairs of armpit and pubic area before Ihram.

2- A person who intends to go to Hajj leaves the hair of the face and the head from the beginning of Dhu'l-Qa'dah and the person who intends to go to Umrah leaves them one month before, and some of Faqihs considered it as obligatory.

3- Performing Ghusl of Ihram before Ihram in Miqat. This Ghusl is also correct for a woman who is in her menstruation period and has given birth to a child. Performing it before other acts is permitted especially when there is a fear of nonexistence of water in Miqat and if water was found in Miqat, then it is Mustahab to perform that Ghusl again and after performing this Ghusl if Mukallaf (accountable; a Muslim who has reached the age of puberty) wears clothes or eats things which are Haraam for Muhrim, then performing again is Mustahab and if Mukallaf performs Ghusl in the day, that Ghusl suffices until the end of the next night and if it is performed in the night then it suffices until the end of the next day. But he/she should perform the Ghusl again if the ablution is invalidated before Ihram and after Ghusl.

4- Saying the following sentences while wearing the two clothing of Ihram:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي رَزَقَنِي مَا أُورِي بِهِ عَوْرَتِي وَ أُودِي فِيهِ فَرَضِي وَ أَعْبُدُ فِيهِ رَبِّي وَ  
أَنْتَهَى فِيهِ إِلَى مَا أَمَرَنِي الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي قَصَدْتُهُ فَبَلَّغَنِي وَ أَرَدْتُهُ فَأَعَانَنِي وَ قَبَلَنِي  
وَ لَمْ يَقْطَعْ بِي وَ وَجْهَهُ أَرَدْتُ فَسَلَّمَنِي فَهُوَ حِصْنِي وَ كَهْفِي وَ حِرْزِي وَ ظَهْرِي وَ  
مَلَاذِي وَ رَجَائِي وَ مَنْجَايَ وَ ذُخْرِي وَ عُدَّتِي فِي شِدَّتِي وَ رَخَائِي .

5- The two towels of Ihram should be made of cotton.

6- Wearing Ihram in the following way: If it is possible, after the prayer of noon and if it is not, then after another obligatory prayer. If this is not also possible, then wear after performing six or two Rak'ats of Mustahab prayer, reciting Tawhid Sura after Hamd in the first Rak'at and "قل يا ايها الكافرون" after Hamd Sura in the second Rak'at although performing six Rak'ats is better. One should praise and thank ALLAH (swt) after the prayer and sending Salawat (salutation to Muhammad (s.a.) and his family (a.s.)); then the pilgrim should say:

لِلَّهِمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ

تَجْعَلَنِي مِمَّنْ اسْتَجَابَ لَكَ وَ آمَنَ بِوَعْدِكَ وَ اتَّبَعَ أَمْرَكَ فَأَيُّ عَبْدِكَ وَ فِي قَبْضَتِكَ لَا أُوقِي إِلَّا مَ وَ قَيْتَ وَ لَا أَخْذُ إِلَّا مَا أَعْطَيْتَ وَ قَدْ  
ذَكَرْتَ الْحَجَّ فَأَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ تَعَزِّمَ لِي عَلَيْهِ عَلَى كِتَابِكَ وَ سُنَّةِ نَبِيِّكَ صَلَوَاتُكَ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ وَ تُقَوِّينِي عَلَى مَا ضَعُفْتُ وَ تُسَلِّمَ لِي مَنَاسِكِي  
فِي يُسْرٍ مِنْكَ وَ عَافِيَةٍ وَ اجْعَلْنِي مِنَ الَّذِينَ رَضِيْتَهُ وَ ارْتَضَيْتَهُ وَ سَمَّيْتَهُ وَ كَتَبْتَهُ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي خَرَجْتُ مِنْ شُقَّةٍ بَعِيدَةٍ وَ أَنْفَقْتُ  
مَالِي إِبْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِكَ اللَّهُمَّ فَتَمِّمْ لِي حَجَّتِي وَ عُمْرَتِي، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أُرِيدُ التَّمَنُّعَ بِالْعُمْرَةِ إِلَى الْحَجِّ عَلَى كِتَابِكَ وَ سُنَّةِ نَبِيِّكَ صَلَوَاتُكَ  
عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ، فَإِنْ عَرَّضَ لِي عَارِضٌ يَحْبِسُنِي فَخَلِّنِي حَيْثُ حَبَسْتَنِي بِقُدْرِكَ الَّذِي قَدَّرْتَ عَلَيَّ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنْ لَمْ تَكُنْ حِجَّةً فَعُمْرَةً أَحْرَمَ لَكَ  
شَعْرِي وَ بَشْرِي وَ لَحْمِي وَ دَمِي وَ عِظَامِي وَ مَجْيِي وَ عَصَبِي مِنَ النِّسَاءِ وَ الثِّيَابِ وَ الطَّيِّبِ ابْتِغَاءً بِذَلِكَ وَ وَجْهَكَ وَ الدَّارَ الْآخِرَةَ

7- It is not sufficient to say the intention of Ihram in the heart, It is Mustahab for men to say Labbayk with a loud voice.

8- We have said before that obligatory Labbayk which causes the entrance in the state of Ihram is as follows as a precaution:

لَبَّيْكَ اللَّهُمَّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ لَبَّيْكَ، إِنَّ الْحَمْدَ وَ النِّعْمَةَ لَكَ وَ الْمُلْكَ،  
لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ

And it is Mustahab to say after that:

لَبَّيْكَ ذَا الْمَعَارِجِ لَبَّيْكَ دَاعِيَا إِلَى دَارِ السَّلَامِ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ غَفَّارَ الذُّنُوبِ  
لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ أَهْلَ التَّلْبِيَةِ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ ذَا الْجَلَالِ وَالْإِكْرَامِ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ تَبْدِيءُ  
الْمَعَادِ إِلَيْكَ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ تَسْتَعْنِي وَ يُفْتَقِرُ إِلَيْكَ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ مَرْعُوبًا وَ مَرْهُوبًا  
إِلَيْكَ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ إِلَهَ الْحَقِّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ ذَا النِّعْمَاءِ وَ الْفَضْلِ الْحَسَنِ الْجَمِيلِ  
لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ كَشَّافَ الْكُرْبِ الْعِظَامِ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ عَبْدُكَ وَ ابْنُ عَبْدِكَ لَبَّيْكَ،  
لَبَّيْكَ يَا كَرِيمُ لَبَّيْكَ

And it is also good to say these sentences:

لَبَّيْكَ أَتَقَرَّبُ إِلَيْكَ بِمُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ بِحُجَّةٍ أَوْ عُمْرَةٍ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ  
وَ هَذِهِ عُمْرَةٌ مُتَعَةٌ إِلَى الْحَجِّ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ أَهْلَ التَّلْبِيَةِ لَبَّيْكَ، لَبَّيْكَ تَلْبِيَةً تَمَامُهَا وَ  
بَلَاغُهَا عَلَيْكَ

9- One must repeat reciting Labbayk in the state of Ihram in these cases also:

- 1- When awaking from the sleep.
- 2- After each obligatory and Mustahab prayer.
- 3- When reaching other pilgrims who are ride.
- 4- When going up the ascent or coming down from that.
- 5- While getting in or off the vehicles, animals or like them.
- 6- Reciting then a lot in the time of the dawn and women also must recite these Labbayks during menstruation and lochia, and the ones who are performing Umrah should continuously recite Labbayks until he/she sees the house of Mecca and stops that after seeing them, but the Labbayk of Hajj are continuous until the noon of the day of Arafa and stops after that.

### **Makrooh (Disliked) acts of Ihram**

- 1- Wearing black Ihram clothing. It is precaution and better to renounce that and wearing white Ihram clothing.
- 2- Sleeping in yellow bedding and pillow for a Muhrim.
- 3- Wearing impure clothing of Ihram and if clothing becomes impure during Ihram, it is better not to



wash them in the state of Ihram, but it is possible to change that clothing.

4- Wearing striped clothing of Ihram.

5- Using henna before Ihram in the way that its effects remain until Ihram.

6- It is better for Muhrim not to use washcloth or like that on the body.

7- It is a precaution to say Labbayk answering someone who is calling a Muhrim.

## Mustahab Acts of Entering the Haram

Entering the Haram barefoot keeping shoes in the hand in order to show the humility and obedience in front of almighty Allah, this act has lots of blessings and benefits.

One should recite this prayer while entering the Haram:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّكَ قُلْتَ فِي كِتَابِكَ وَقَوْلِكَ الْحَقُّ: وَ أَدْنَى فِي النَّاسِ بِالْحَجِّ يَأْتُوكَ رَجَالًا  
وَ عَلَى كُلِّ ضَامِرٍ يَأْتِينَ مِنْ كُلِّ فَجٍّ عَمِيقٍ - اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَرْجُوا أَنْ أَكُونَ مِمَّنْ  
أَجَابَ دَعْوَتَكَ وَ قَدْ جِئْتُ مِنْ شِقَّةٍ بَعِيدَةٍ وَ فَجٍّ عَمِيقٍ سَامِعٍ لِنِدَائِكَ وَ مُسْتَجِيبًا  
لَكَ مُطِيعًا لِأَمْرِكَ وَ كُلُّ ذَلِكَ بِفَضْلِكَ عَلَيَّ وَ إِحْسَانِكَ إِلَيَّ فَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ عَلَى م  
وَ فَقَّتَنِي لَهُ أَبْتَغَى بِذَلِكَ الزُّلْفَةَ عِنْدَكَ وَ الْقُرْبَةَ إِلَيْكَ وَ الْمَنْزِلَةَ لَدَيْكَ وَ الْمَغْفِرَةَ  
لِذُنُوبِي وَ التَّوْبَةَ عَلَيَّ مِنْهَا بِمَنِّكَ اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ حَرِّمْ بَدَنِي  
عَلَى النَّارِ وَ آمِنِّي مِنْ عَذَابِكَ وَ عِقَابِكَ بِرَحْمَتِكَ يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ

## Mustahab Acts of Entering the Great Mecca

It is Mustahab to perform Ghusl for entering Mecca and entering Mecca should be in the state of humility.

# Rites of Masjid al-Haraam and Great Mecca

It is Mustahab to perform Ghushl for entering Masjid al-Haraam and it is also Mustahab to enter barefoot and with the state of dignity and entering from the door of "Bani Shaiba" and it is said that the door of Bani Shaiba is currently in front of Baab al-Salaam, therefore it is better than a person enters from Baab al-Salaam and stands at the door of Masjid al-Haraam and says:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ، بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَبِاللَّهِ وَ مِنْ اللَّهِ وَ مَا  
شَاءَ اللَّهُ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى أَنْبِيَاءِ اللَّهِ وَرُسُلِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ، صَلَّى اللَّهُ  
عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ. السَّلَامُ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ خَلِيلِ اللَّهِ وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

And then enters the Masjid al-Haraam and raises the hands and says while facing the Ka'ba:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ فِي مَقَامِي هَذَا، وَ فِي أَوَّلِ مَنَاسِكِي أَنْ تَقْبَلَ تَوْبَتِي، وَ أَنْ تَتَجَاوَزَ  
عَنْ خَطِيئَتِي وَ أَنْ تَضَعَ عَنِّي وَزْرِي، الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي بَلَّغَنِي بَيْتَهُ الْحَرَامَ، اللَّهُمَّ  
إِنِّي أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ هَذَا بَيْتُكَ الْحَرَامُ الَّذِي جَعَلْتَهُ مَثَابَةً لِلنَّاسِ وَ أَمْنًا مُبَارَكًا وَ هُدًى  
لِلْعَالَمِينَ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي عَبْدُكَ، وَ الْبَلَدُ بَلَدُكَ، وَ الْبَيْتُ بَيْتُكَ، جِئْتُ أَطْلُبُ  
رَحْمَتَكَ، وَ أَوْمُ طَاعَتِكَ، مُطِيعًا لِأَمْرِكَ، رَاضِيًا بِقَدْرِكَ، أَسْأَلُكَ مَسْأَلَةَ الْفَقِيرِ  
إِلَيْكَ الْخَائِفِ لِعُقُوبَتِكَ، اللَّهُمَّ افْتَحْ لِي أَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ، وَ اسْتَعْمِلْنِي بِطَاعَتِكَ وَ  
مَرْضَاتِكَ

And it is mentioned in another hadith that one should recite at the door of mosque:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَ بِاللَّهِ وَ مِنْ اللَّهِ وَ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَ مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ وَ عَلَى مِلَّةِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ، صَلَّى  
اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ، وَ خَيْرُ الْأَسْمَاءِ لِلَّهِ وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ، وَ السَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ،  
السَّلَامُ عَلَى مُحَمَّدِ بْنِ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَ رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَ بَرَكَاتُهُ،  
السَّلَامُ عَلَى أَنْبِيَاءِ اللَّهِ وَ رُسُلِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى خَلِيلِ الرَّحْمَنِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى  
الْمُرْسَلِينَ، وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْنَا وَ عَلَى عِبَادِ اللَّهِ الصَّالِحِينَ

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، وَبَارِكْ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، وَارْحَمْ  
مُحَمَّدًا وَآلَ مُحَمَّدٍ، كَمَا صَلَّيْتَ وَبَارَكْتَ وَتَرَحَّمْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَآلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ،  
إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ عَبْدِكَ وَرَسُولِكَ، اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ  
خَلِيلِكَ وَ عَلَى أَنْبِيَآئِكَ وَرُسُلِكَ وَ سَلِّمْ عَلَيْهِمْ، وَ سَلَامٌ عَلَى الْمُرْسَلِينَ، وَ  
الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

اللَّهُمَّ افْتَحْ لِي أَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ، وَ اسْتَعْمِلْنِي فِي طَاعَتِكَ وَ مَرْضَاتِكَ وَ احْفَظْنِي  
بِحِفْظِ الْإِيمَانِ أَبَدًا مَا أَبْقَيْتَنِي، جَلَّ ثَنَاءُ وَجْهِكَ، الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي جَعَلَنِي مِنْ وَفْدِهِ  
وَ زُورِهِ وَ جَعَلَنِي مِمَّنْ يَعْمُرُ مَسَاجِدَهُ، وَ جَعَلَنِي مِمَّنْ يُنَاجِيهِ اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي عَبْدُكَ وَ  
زَائِرُكَ فِي بَيْتِكَ وَ عَلَى كُلِّ مَاتِي حَقٌّ لِمَنْ أَتَاهُ وَ زَارَهُ، وَ أَنْتَ خَيْرُ مَاتِي وَ أَكْرَمُ  
مَزُورٍ فَاسْأَلْكَ يَا اللَّهُ يَا رَحْمَنُ بِأَنَّكَ أَنْتَ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ وَحْدَكَ لَا شَرِيكَ  
لَكَ بِأَنَّكَ وَاحِدٌ أَحَدٌ صَمَدٌ لَمْ تَلِدْ وَ لَمْ تُوَلَدْ وَ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ، وَ أَنْ مُحَمَّدًا  
عَبْدُكَ وَ رَسُولُكَ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ عَلَى أَهْلِ بَيْتِهِ يَا جَوَادُ يَا كَرِيمُ يَا مَاجِدُ يَا  
جَبَّارُ يَا كَرِيمُ أَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ تَجْعَلَ تُحْفَتَكَ إِيَّايَ بِزِيَارَتِي إِيَّاكَ أَوَّلَ شَيْءٍ تُعْطِينِي  
فَكَأَنَّكَ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ

Then he/she should recite three times:

اللَّهُمَّ فَكِّ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ

And then say:

وَ أَوْسِعْ عَلَيَّ مِنْ رِزْقِكَ الْحَلَالَ الطَّيِّبِ وَ ادْرَأْعَنِي شَرَّ شَيَاطِينِ الْجِنِّ وَ الْإِنْسِ وَ  
شَرَّ فَسَقَةِ الْعَرَبِ وَ الْعَجَمِ

It is Mustahab to recite while being parallel to al-Hajar al-Aswad:

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ وَأَنَّ مُحَمَّدَ عَبْدَهُ وَرَسُولَهُ آمَنْتُ بِاللَّهِ  
وَكَفَرْتُ بِالْجِبْتِ وَالطَّاغُوتِ وَاللَّاتِ وَالْعُزَّىٰ وَبِعِبَادَةِ الشَّيْطَانِ وَبِعِبَادَةِ كُلِّ  
نِدٍّ يُدْعَىٰ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ

And then go closer to al-Hajar al-Aswad and if it is possible put the hand on it and recite:

أَلْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي هَدَانَا لِهَذَا

وَمَا كُنَّا لِنَهْتَدِيَ لَوْلَا أَنْ هَدَانَا اللَّهُ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَلَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ، اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ خَلْقِهِ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ مِمَّا أَخْشَىٰ وَ  
أَحْذَرُ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَ لَهُ الْحَمْدُ يُحْيِي وَيُمِيتُ وَيُحْيِي وَهُوَ حَيٌّ لَا يَمُوتُ بِيَدِهِ الْخَيْرُ وَهُوَ  
عَلَىٰ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

And then send Salawat to prophet (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) and salutations to the prophets in the same way that he/she saluted while entering the mosque.

And then say:

نِي أَوْمِنُ بِوَعْدِكَ وَأُؤْفَىٰ بِعَهْدِكَ

It is mentioned in a reliable hadeeth that when you reach the al-Hajar al-Aswad raise your hands and praise and thank Allah and send Salawat to Prophet (s.a.) and ask Allah to accept your Hajj, and kiss the al-Hajar al-Aswad if it is possible. If it is not, then touch it with your hand and if this is also not possible either, point to it and say:

اللَّهُمَّ أَمَانَتِي أَدَيْتَهَا وَمِيثَاقِي تَعَاهَدْتَهُ لِتَشْهَدَ لِي بِالْمُوفَاةِ اللَّهُمَّ تَصَدِّقًا بِكِتَابِكَ وَ  
عَلَىٰ سُنَّتِ نَبِيِّكَ صَلَوَاتِكَ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ  
وَأَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ آمَنْتُ بِاللَّهِ وَكَفَرْتُ بِالْجِبْتِ وَالطَّاغُوتِ وَاللَّاتِ وَ

الْعُزَى وَ عِبَادَةِ الشَّيْطَانِ وَ عِبَادَةِ كُلِّ نَدٍّ يُدْعَى مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ

And if you cannot recite all of this recite some of it and say:

اللَّهُمَّ إِلَيْكَ بَسَطْتُ يَدِي وَ فِيهِ عِنْدَكَ عَظُمْتُ رَغْبَتِي فَاقْبَلْ سُبْحَتِي وَ اغْفِرْ لِي وَ  
ارْحَمْنِي، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنَ الْكُفْرِ وَ الْفَقْرِ وَ مَوَاقِفِ الْخِزْيِ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَ  
الْآخِرَةِ

It is Mustahab to say the following during Tawaf:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ بِاسْمِكَ الَّذِي يُمَشَى بِهِ عَلَى طَلَلِ الْمَاءِ كَمَا يَمْشَى بِهِ عَلَى جُدَدِ  
الْأَرْضِ وَ أَسْأَلُكَ بِاسْمِكَ الَّذِي تَهْتَرُ بِهِ أَقْدَامُ مَلَائِكَتِكَ وَ أَسْأَلُكَ بِاسْمِكَ الَّذِي  
دَعَاكَ بِهِ مُوسَى مِنْ جَانِبِ الطُّورِ فَاسْتَجَبْتَ لَهُ وَ أَلْقَيْتَ عَلَيْهِ مَحَبَّةً مِنْكَ وَ  
أَسْأَلُكَ بِاسْمِكَ الَّذِي غَفَرْتَ بِهِ لِمُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ مَا تَقَدَّمَ مِنْ ذَنْبِهِ وَ  
مَا تَأَخَّرَ وَ أَتَمَمْتَ عَلَيْهِ نِعْمَتَكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ بِي كَذَا وَ كَذَا

And then ask your wishes and requests instead of “كذا و كذا” from almighty Allah.

Also it is Mustahab to recite during Tawaf:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي إِلَيْكَ فَقِيرٌ وَ إِنِّي خَائِفٌ مُسْتَجِيرٌ فَلَا تُغَيِّرْ جِسْمِي وَ لَا تُبَدِّلْ اسْمِي

Then send Salawat to Mohammad (a.s.) and his family (a.s.), especially when reaching the door of the house of Ka'ba, it is Mustahab for a pilgrim that when he/she reaches the Hijr Ismael to look at the top of it and recite:

اللَّهُمَّ ادْخُلْنِي الْجَنَّةَ وَ أَجْرْنِي مِنَ النَّارِ بِرَحْمَتِكَ وَ عَافِنِي مِنَ السُّقْمِ وَ أَوْسِعْ  
عَلَيَّ مِنَ الرِّزْقِ الْحَلَالِ وَ ادرْ عَنِّي شَرَّ فُسْقَةِ الْجِنِّ وَ الْإِنْسِ وَ شَرَّ فُسْقَةِ الْعَرَبِ وَ  
العجم

And when he/she passes the Hijr then he/she should recite:

يَا ذَا الْمَنِّ وَالطُّوْلِ يَا

ذَا الْجُودِ وَالْكَرَمِ إِنَّ عَمَلِي ضَعِيفٌ فَضَاعِفُهُ لِي وَتَقَبَّلُهُ مِنِّي إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ

And when this pilgrim reaches the Rukn Yamani (the fourth corner of the Ka'ba) she/he should raise the hand and recite:

يَا اللَّهُ يَا وَلِيَّ الْعَافِيَةِ، وَ خَالِقَ الْعَافِيَةِ، وَ رَازِقَ الْعَافِيَةِ، وَ الْمُنْعِمَ بِالْعَافِيَةِ، وَ  
الْمُتَفَضِّلَ بِالْعَافِيَةِ عَلَيَّ وَ عَلَى جَمِيعِ خَلْقِكَ، يَا رَحْمَنَ الدُّنْيَا وَ الْآخِرَةِ وَ  
رَحِيمَهُمَا، صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، وَ ارْزُقْنَا الْعَافِيَةَ، وَ تَمَامَ الْعَافِيَةِ، وَ  
شُكْرَ الْعَافِيَةِ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَ الْآخِرَةِ، يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ

And then turn the face to Ka'ba and recite:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي شَرَّفَكَ وَ عَظَّمَكَ، وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي بَعَثَ مُحَمَّدًا نَبِيًّا، وَ جَعَلَ  
عَلِيًّا إِمَامًا، اللَّهُمَّ اهْدِ لَهُ خِيَارَ خَلْقِكَ، وَ جَنِّبْهُ شِرَارَ خَلْقِكَ

And when he/she reaches between Rukn Yamani and al-Hajar la-Aswad should recite:

رَبَّنَا آتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَ فِي الْآخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً وَ قِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

And in the seventh round when the pilgrim reaches the Mustajar (3) it is Mustahab that he/she opens his/her hands and place the face and abdomen on the wall of Ka'ba and recites:

اللَّهُمَّ الْبَيْتُ بَيْتُكَ، وَ الْعَبْدُ عَبْدُكَ، وَ هَذَا مَقَامُ الْعَائِدِ بِكَ مِنَ النَّارِ

And then confess to his/her sins and asks forgiveness from the almighty Allah, that will be accepted Allah willing. Then after that, recite:

اللَّهُمَّ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ الرُّوحُ

وَالْفَرْجُ وَالْعَافِيَةُ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّ عَمَلِي ضَعِيفٌ فَضَاعِفُهُ لِي، وَاعْفِرْ لِي مَا طَلَعْتَ عَلَيْهِ مِنِّي وَخَفِيَ عَلَيَّ خَلْقَكَ، اسْتَجِيرُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ النَّارِ

And pray for anything that he/she wants, and put the hand on Rukn Yamani which is situated before Rukn al-Hajar al-Aswad and then comes close to al-Hajar al-Aswad and complete Tawaf and recite:

اللَّهُمَّ قِنِّعْنِي بِمَا رَزَقْتَنِي وَبَارِكْ لِي فِي مَا آتَيْتَنِي

And it is Mustahab for the performer of Tawaf that he/she rubs his/her hand on Rukns (pl. or Rukn; four corners) of Ka'ba and al-Hajar al-Aswad in each round and recite while touching the Hajar  
And recite:

أَمَانَتِي أَدَيْتُهَا وَ مِيثَاقِي تَعَاهَدْتُهُ لِتَشْهَدَ لِي بِالْمُؤَافَاةِ

Although performing lots of these acts is not possible in the time of obligatory Hajj and may cause disturbance to the other pilgrims, the pilgrim should perform any of them which is possible that does not cause disturbance and trouble.

It is Mustahab that in the prayer of Tawaf the pilgrim should recite “Tawhid Sura” after the Hamd in the first Rak'at and “Sura of الكافرون” in the second Rak'at, and praise and thank Allah after the prayer and send Salawat to Mohammad (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) and ask Allah for acceptance. It has been mentioned in some of the hadeeth that Imam Sadiq (a.s.) prostrated after the prayer of Tawaf and said:

سَجَدَ لَكَ وَجْهِي تَعَبُداً وَرِقاً، لِإِلَهِهِ إِلَّا أَنْتَ حَقّاً حَقّاً، أَلْأَوَّلُ قَبْلَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ، وَ الْآخِرُ بَعْدَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ، وَ هَ أَنَا ذَابِبِينَ يَدَيْكَ نَاصِيَتِي بِيَدِكَ، فَاعْفِرْ لِي، إِنَّهُ لَا يَعْفِرُ الذَّنْبَ الْعَظِيمَ غَيْرُكَ، فَاعْفِرْ لِي، فَإِنِّي مُقِرٌّ بِذُنُوبِي عَلَى نَفْسِي، وَ لَا يَدْفَعُ الذَّنْبَ الْعَظِيمَ غَيْرُكَ

And after the prostration the face of his holiness were wet with tears.

It is also Mustahab that after the prayer of Tawaf and before Sa'y the pilgrim goes to Zamzam well and pour some water on his/her head and back and abdomen and recite:

ا

لِّلّٰهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ عِلْمًا نَافِعًا وَ رِزْقًا وَّاسِعًا وَ شِفَاءً مِّنْ كُلِّ دَاءٍ وَ سُقْمٍ

The pilgrim should go close to al-Hajar al-Aswad after performing the acts of Tawaf.

It is Mustahab to go to Safa from the door which is parallel to al-Hajar al-Aswad and go gently above the Safa and look at the house of Ka'ba and look at the Rukn of al-Hajar al-Aswad and praise and thank Allah and consider the divine gifts and then recite:

“الله اكبر” seven times,

“الحمد لله” seven times,

“لا اله الا الله” seven times and

إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَ لَهُ الْحَمْدُ يُحْيِي وَ يُمِيتُ وَ هُوَ حَيٌّ  
لَا يَمُوتُ بِيَدِهِ الْخَيْرُ وَ هُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

Seven times, and then send Salawat to Mohammad (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) three times and recite:

اَللّٰهُ اَكْبَرُ عَلَى مَا هَدَانَا، وَ اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ عَلَى مَا اَبْلَانَا، وَ اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ اَلْحَيِّ الْقَيُّوْمِ، وَ اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ الدَّائِمِ

م

And repeat this three times. Then recite three times:

أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ



وَ

أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ لَا نَعْبُدُ إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ مُخْلِصِينَ لَهُ الدِّينَ وَ لَوْ كَرِهَ الْمُشْرِكُونَ

And then recite three times:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ الْعَفْوَ وَالْعَافِيَةَ وَالْيَقِينَ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ

Also recite three times:

اللَّهُمَّ آتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْآخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

And then recite each of following phrases one hundred times:

“الله اكبر”, “لا اله الا الله”, “الحمد لله”

and “سبحان الله”.

Then it is Mustahab that the pilgrim recites the following:

لِإِلَهٍ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ وَحْدَهُ، أَنْجَزَ وَعَدَهُ وَنَصَرَ عَبْدَهُ، وَغَلَبَ الْأَحْزَابَ وَحْدَهُ، فَلَهُ  
الْمُلْكُ وَ لَهُ الْحَمْدُ وَحْدَهُ اللَّهُمَّ بَارِكْ لِي فِي الْمَوْتِ وَ فِيمَا بَعْدَ الْمَوْتِ، اللَّهُمَّ  
إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنْ ظُلْمَةِ الْقَبْرِ وَ وَحْشَتِهِ، اللَّهُمَّ أَظِلَّنِي فِي ظِلِّ عَرْشِكَ يَوْمَ لَا ظِلَّ  
إِلَّا ظِلُّكَ

And he/she should repeat many times that he/she confides his/her religion, self, family and assets to Allah and then recite:

أَسْتَوِدِعُ اللَّهَ الرَّحْمَنَ الرَّحِيمَ الَّذِي لَا يَضِيعُ وَدَائِعُهُ دِينِي وَ نَفْسِي وَ أَهْلِي اللَّهُمَّ

اسْتَعْمَلْنِي عَلَى كِتَابِكَ وَ سُنَّةِ نَبِيِّكَ وَ تَوْفَّقْنِي عَلَى مِلَّتِهِ وَ أَعِدْنِي مِنَ الْفِتْنَةِ

And then recite "الله اكبر" three times and if he/she cannot perform this entire act, then he/she should recite as much possible.

Also it is Mustahab to recite this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي كُلَّ ذَنْبٍ أَذْنَبْتُهُ قَطُّ، فَإِنْ عُدْتُ فَعُدْ عَلَيَّ بِالْمَغْفِرَةِ، فَإِنَّكَ أَنْتَ  
الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ، اللَّهُمَّ افْعَلْ بِي مَا أَنْتَ أَهْلُهُ، فَإِنَّكَ إِنْ تَفَعَّلَ بِي مَا أَنْتَ أَهْلُهُ  
تَرْحَمْنِي، وَإِنْ تُعَذِّبْنِي فَأَنْتَ غَنِيٌّ عَنِّ عَذَابِي، وَ أَنْ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى رَحْمَتِكَ، فَيَا مَنْ  
أَنَا مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى رَحْمَتِهِ إِرْحَمْنِي، اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَفْعَلْ بِي مِثْلَ مَا أَنَا أَهْلُهُ، فَإِنَّكَ إِنْ تَفَعَّلَ بِي مَا  
أَنَا أَهْلُهُ تُعَذِّبْنِي وَ لَمْ تَظْلِمْنِي، أَصَبَحْتُ أَتَقِي عَذَابَكَ وَ لِأَخَافُ جَوْرَكَ، فَيَا مَنْ هُوَ  
عَدْلٌ لَا يَجُورُ إِرْحَمْنِي

It is Mustahab for a pilgrim to perform Sa'y on foot and perform the Harwala (jogging) from the marked place; it means that he/she goes a little faster and if he/she is on a cart, then should speed up the cart and walk normally after that to Marwah and perform like this in return. Harwala is not for women and it is Mustahab to cry to the presence of Allah and pray a lot while performing Sa'y.

The acts which are Mustahab in the Ihram of Umrah are also Mustahab in the Ihram of Hajj. When a person wears Ihram and comes out of Mecca and goes to the high places around Mecca, he /she should recite Labbayk with a loud voice and when one notices Mena should recite:

اللَّهُمَّ إِيَّاكَ أَرْجُو وَ إِيَّاكَ أَدْعُو فَبَلِّغْنِي أُمْلِي وَ أَصْلِحْ لِي عَمَلِي

And continue this way with a submissive heart and body praising Allah and when he/she reaches Mena should recite:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي أَقْدَمَنِيهَا صَالِحاً فِي عَافِيَةٍ وَ بَلَّغَنِي هَذَا الْمَكَانَ :

and then say:

اللَّهُمَّ هَذِهِ مِنِّي وَهِيَ مِمَّا مَنَنْتَ بِهِ عَلَيْنَا مِنَ الْمَنَاسِكِ، فَاسْئَلُكَ أَنْ تَمُنَّ عَلَيَّ  
بِمَا مَنَنْتَ عَلَيَّ أَنْبِيَائِكَ، فَإِنَّمَا أَنَا عَبْدُكَ وَفِي قَبْضَتِكَ

If it is possible it is better that the pilgrim stays the night of Arafat in Mena and perform Allah's worship. It is better to perform worship and prayers in al-Khaif Mosque and then recite Ta'qibat (followings of the prayer) after the dawn prayer until sunset and then go to Arafat. If he/she wants to go after the sunset there is no problem, but the tradition says that it is better to pass Wadi Mohassar before the complete sunset and going before morning is Makrooh, unless there is a necessity or fear of congestion of the crowds.

One should recite this prayer when he/she goes to Arafat:

اللَّهُمَّ إِلَيْكَ صَمَدْتُ وَ

إِيَّاكَ اعْتَمَدْتُ وَوَجْهَكَ أَرَدْتُ أَسْئَلُكَ أَنْ تُبَارِكَ لِي فِي رِحْلَتِي وَ أَنْ تَقْضِيَ لِي حَاجَتِي وَ أَنْ تَجْعَلَنِي مِمَّنْ تُبَاهِي بِهِ الْيَوْمَ مَنْ هُوَ  
أَفْضَلُ مِنِّي

And repeat Labbayk until reaching Arafat.

Although, performing lots of these Mustahab acts is difficult nowadays, the pilgrim can perform them as much as he/she can, and if he/she has the intention of performing all of them, Allah will give him/her the benefits and blessings; Allah willing.

### **Mustahab Acts in Wuqf in Arafat:**

- 1- Being pure in the state of Wuqf.
- 2- Performing Ghusl and it is better to be near noontime
- 3- Abstaining from all means and causes of losing concentration in order to have the heart noticing the presence of Allah.
- 4- Performing Wuqf in the flat area behind the hill. Going up the hill is Makrooh.
- 5- Performing the noon and afternoon prayer at the beginning of the time with one Azan and two Iqama.

6- Noticing the heart to Allah and praising and praying to Allah, and then reciting **الله اكبر** one hundred times and Tawhid Sura one hundred times and asking anything from Allah and asking for refuge to Allah from the accursed Satan and also reciting this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ رَبَّ الْمَشَاعِرِ كُلِّهَا، فَكَّرَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ، وَ أَوْسَعَلِيَّ مِنْ رِزْقِكَ الْحَلَالِ، وَ اذْرَأْ عَنِّي شَرَّ فِسْقَةِ الْجِنَّ وَ الْإِنْسِ، اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَمَكِّرْ بِي، وَ لَا تَخْدَعْ عَنِّي، وَ لَا تَسْتَدْرِجْنِي، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ بِحَوْلِكَ وَ جُودِكَ وَ كَرَمِكَ وَ فَضْلِكَ وَ مَنِّكَ، يَا أَسْمَعَ السَّامِعِينَ، وَ يَا بَصَرَ النَّاطِرِينَ، وَ يَا أَسْرَعَ الْحَاسِبِينَ وَ يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ، أَنْ تُصَلِّيَ عَلَيَّ مُحَمَّدٌ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ أَنْتَفَعَلَ بِي (كذا و كذا

ا

Asking for wishes, and then raising the hand to the heavens and reciting:

اللَّهُمَّ حَاجَتِي إِلَيْكَ الَّتِي إِنْ أَعْطَيْتَنِيهَا لَمْ يَضُرَّنِي مَا مَنَعْتَنِي، وَ إِنْ مَنَعْتَنِيهَا لَمْ يَنْفَعْنِي مَا عَطَيْتَنِي، أَسْأَلُكَ خَلَاصَ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي عَبْدُكَ، وَ مَلِكُ نَاصِيَتِي بِيَدِكَ، وَ أَجَلِي بِعِلْمِكَ، أَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ تُوفِّقَنِي لِمَا يُرْضِيكَ عَنِّي، وَ أَنْ تُسَلِّمَنِي مَنَاسِكِي، الَّتِي أَرَيْتَهَا خَلِيلَكَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ وَ دَلَّلْتَ عَلَيْهَا نَبِيَّكَ مُحَمَّدًا صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَ آلِهِ

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْنِي مِمَّنْ رَضِيَتْ عَمَلُهُ، وَ أَطَلَّتْ عُمُرُهُ، وَ أَحْيَيْتَهُ بَعْدَ الْمَوْتِ

7- Reciting this prayer:

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَ حُدَّهُ لِاشْرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُلْكُ وَ لَهُ الْحَمْدُ، يُحْيِي وَ يُمِيتُ، وَ هُوَ حَيٌّ لَا يَمُوتُ، بِيَدِهِ الْخَيْرُ وَ هُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ. اللَّهُمَّ لَكَ الْحَمْدُ كَالَّذِي تَقُولُ، وَ خَيْرًا مِمَّا نَقُولُ، وَ فَوْقَ مَا يَقُولُ الْلِقَائِلُونَ. اللَّهُمَّ لَكَ صَلَاتِي وَ نُسُكِي وَ مَحْيَايَ وَ مَمَاتِي وَ لَكَ تُرَاثِي وَ بَكَ حَوْلِي وَ مِنْكَ قُوَّتِي. اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنَ الْفَقْرِ، وَ مِنَ وَسَاوِسِ الصُّدُورِ، وَ مِنَ شَتَاتِ الْأَمْرِ، وَ مِنَ عَذَابِ الْقَبْرِ. اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ خَيْرَ الرِّيَّاحِ وَ أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنْ شَرِّ مَا يَجِيءُ الرِّيَّاحُ، وَ أَسْأَلُكَ خَيْرَ اللَّيْلِ وَ خَيْرَ النَّهَارِ. اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْ فِي قَلْبِي نُورًا، وَ فِي سَمْعِي وَ بَصَرِي نُورًا، وَ فِي لَحْمِي وَ دَمِي وَ

عِظَامِيَوَ عُرُوْقِي وَ مَقْعَدِي وَ مَقَامِي وَ مَدْخَلِي وَ مَخْرَجِي نُورًا، وَاعْظِمْ لِي نُورًا، يَا رَبِّ يَوْمَ أَلْقَاكَ، إِنَّكَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

And one should also give out charities and alms as much as possible in these days.

8- The Pilgrim should face Ka'ba and recite each of these statements one hundred times:

سبحان الله، "الله أكبر"، "ما شاء الله لا قوة إلا بالله"، "أشهد أن لا إله إلا الله وحده لا شريك له، له الملك، وله الحمد، يحيى ويميت، ويميت ويحيى، وهو حي لا يموت، بيده الخير، وهو على كل شيء قدير

And then recite ten verses from the beginning of Sura Baqara and then recite sura Tawhid three times and Ayat al-Kursi to the end, then recite:

إِنَّ رَبَّكُمُ اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ فِي سِتَّةِ أَيَّامٍ ثُمَّ اسْتَوَىٰ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ يُغْشَى اللَّيْلَ النَّهَارَ يَطْلُبُهُ حَثِيثًا وَالشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ وَالنُّجُومَ مُسَخَّرَاتٍ بِأَمْرِهِ أَلَا لَهُ الْخَلْقُ وَالْأَمْرُ تَبَارَكَ اللَّهُ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ. أَدْعُورَبَّكُمْ تَضَرُّعًا وَخُفْيَةً إِنَّهُ لَا يُحِبُّ الْمُعْتَدِينَ. وَتَلْفُسِدُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ بَعْدَ إِصْلَاحِهَا وَادْعُوهُ خَوْفًا وَطَمَعًا إِنَّ رَحْمَةَ اللَّهِ قَرِيبٌ مِنَ الْمُحْسِنِينَ

And then recite the *قل اعوذ برب الفلق* and *قل اعوذ برب الناس* Suras.

Then one should thank Allah(swt) for the many blessings which he/she has been bestowed, one by one, especially for the gift of family and assets which Allah(swt) has given him/her, and after that recite:

اللَّهُمَّ لَكَ الْحَمْدُ عَلَى نِعْمَائِكَ الَّتِي لَا تُحْصَى بِعَدَدٍ وَ لَا تُكَافَى بِعَمَلٍ

And then one should thank Allah(swt) with the verses which thank Allah(swt), and praise Allah(swt) with the verses which praise Allah(swt), and saying Allah is the greatest (Takbir) with the verses of Takbir, and saying Allah(swt) is the only god with the verses having this meaning, and send salawat to Mohammad (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) many times and then one should call Allah(swt) by any of his beautiful names, mentioned in the holy Qur'an and then call Allah(swt) by the names which are

mentioned at the end of Hashr Sura, that are as follows:

اللَّهُ، عَالِمُ الْغَيْبِ وَ الشَّهَادَةِ، الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ، الْمَلِكُ الْقُدُّوسُ، السَّلَامُ، الْمُؤْمِنُ  
الْمُهَيَّمِنُ، الْعَزِيزُ الْجَبَّارُ، الْمُتَكَبِّرُ، الْخَالِقُ الْبَارِيءُ، الْمُصَوِّرُ

And thereafter one should recite this prayer:

أَسْأَلُكَ يَا رَحْمَنُ بِكُلِّ اسْمٍ هُوَ لَكَ وَ أَسْأَلُكَ بِقُوَّتِكَ وَ عِزَّتِكَ وَ جَمِيعِ مَا  
أَحَاطَ بِهِ عِلْمُكَ وَ بَارَكَانِكَ كُلِّهَا وَ بِحَقِّ رَسُولِكَ صَلَّى عَلَيْكَ وَ آلِهِ وَ  
بِاسْمِكَ الْأَكْبَرِ الْأَكْبَرِ وَ بِاسْمِكَ الْعَظِيمِ الَّذِي مَنْ دَعَاكَ بِهِ كَانَ حَقًّا عَلَيْكَ أَنْ لَا  
تُخَيِّبَهُ وَ بِاسْمِكَ الْأَعْظَمِ الْأَعْظَمِ الَّذِي مَنْ دَعَاكَ بِهِ كَانَ حَقًّا عَلَيْكَ أَنْ لَا تُرَدَّهُوَ  
أَنْ تُعْطِيَهُ مَا سَأَلَ وَ أَنْ تُغْفِرَ لِي جَمِيعَ ذُنُوبِي فَيَجْمَعِ عِلْمَكَ فِيَّ

And then one should ask anything that he/she wants from Allah (swt) and ask Allah (swt) to give him/her the opportunity of performing Hajj next year and every year. Recite:

### أَسْأَلُكَ الْجَنَّةَ

and اللَّهُمَّ اسْتَغْفِرُكَ اللَّهُ رَبِّي وَ أَتُوبُ إِلَيْهِ وَ

Then recite this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ فَكُنِّي مِنَ النَّارِ وَ

أَوْسِعْ عَلَيَّ مِنْ رِزْقِكَ الْحَلَالِ الطَّيِّبِ وَ ادْرَأْ عَنِّي شَرًّا

فَسَقَّةِ الْجِنَّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَ شَرَّفَسِقَةِ الْعَرَبِ وَالْعَجَمِ

9- It is Mustahab for the pilgrim to recite nearer to the time of sunset:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنَ الْفَقْرِ وَ مِنْ تَشْتُّتِ الْأُمُورِ وَ مِنْ شَرِّ اللَّيْلِ وَ  
النَّهَارِ أَمْسَى ظُلْمِي مُسْتَجِيرٌ بِعَفْوِكَ وَ أَمْسَى خَوْفِي مُسْتَجِيرٌ بِأَمَانِكَ وَ أَمْسَى  
ذُلِّ مُسْتَجِيرٌ بِعِزَّتِكَ وَ أَمْسَى وَجْهِي الْفَانِي مُسْتَجِيرٌ بِوَجْهِكَ الْبَاقِي يَا خَيْرَ مَنْ  
سُئِلَ وَ يَا أَجْوَدَ مَنْ أُعْطِيَ جَلِّئِ بَرَحْمَتِكَ وَ أَلْبِسْنِي عَافِيَتَكَ وَ اصْرِفْ عَنِّي شَرَّ  
جَمِيعِ خَلْقِكَ

It is important to notice that there are lots of Duas for this holy day and reciting them as much as possible is proper, and it is very good to recite the Duas of al-Sahifah al-Kamilah and the Duas of Imam Hussein (a.s.) and Imam Sajjad (a.s.)

The pilgrim should recite after the sunset:

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ آخِرَ

العهد من هذا الموقف، و ارزقنيه منقابل أبداً ما أبقيتني، و اقبلني اليوم مفلحمنجماً مستجاباً لي، مرحوماً مغفوراً لي، بأفضل  
مينقلب به اليوم أحد من وفدك، و حجاج بيتك الحرام، و اجعلني اليوم من أكرم وفدك عليك، و اعطني أفضل ما اعطيت أحداً  
منهم من الخير والبركة و الرحمة و الرضوان و المغفرة، و باركلي فيما أرجع إليه من أهل أو مال أو قليل أو كثير، و بارك لهم في

And recite many times:

اللَّهُمَّ اعْتَقِنِي مِنَ النَّارِ

It is Mustahab that the pilgrim goes with a submissive heart and body to Muzdalifah from Arafat and asks for forgiveness from Allah, and when he/she reaches Tall-e-Sorkh (red hill) should recite:

اللَّهُمَّ ارْحَمْ تَوْقُفِي وَزِدْ فِي عَمَلِي وَ سَلِّمْ لِي دِينِي وَ تَقَبَّلْ مَنَاسِكِي

And he/she should not hurry in walking and not harm anyone and it is Mustahab to delay the prayers of sunset and Isha' until Muzdalifah, even if third of the night passes. And conjunct between two prayers with one Azan and two Iqama, but by noticing to the fact that sometimes reaching Mash'ar is delayed in our time, it is better to perform the prayers of sunset and Isha' in Arafat in these conditions and then he/she should depart the place. And it is Mustahab to spend that night praying to Allah as much as it is possible and reciting this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ هَذِهِ جُمُعٌ، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ أَنْ تَجْمَعَ لِي فِيهَا جَوَامِعَ اللَّهِ لَاتُؤَيِّسَنِي مِنَ  
الْخَيْرِ الَّذِي سَأَلْتُكَ أَنْتَجْمَعَهُ لِي فِي قَلْبِي وَ أَطْلُبُ مِنْكَ أَنْ تُعَرِّفَنِي مَعْرِفَتَ  
أَوْلِيَائِكَ فِي مَنْزِلِي هَذَا وَ أَنْ تَقِينِي جَوَامِعِ الشَّرِّ

It is Mustahab to praise and thank Allah after the dawn prayer, and recite as much as possible from the gifts of almighty Allah and send Salawat to Mohammad (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) Recite this Dua:

اللَّهُمَّ رَبَّ الْمَشْعَرِ

الْحَرَامِ فَكُ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ وَ أَوْسِعْ عَلَيَّ مِنْ رِزْقِكَ الْحَلَالِ وَ ادْرَأْ عَنِّي شَرَّ فَسَقَةِ الْجِنِّ الْإِنْسِ اللَّهُمَّ أَنْتَ خَيْرُ مَطْلُوبٍ إِلَيْهِ وَ  
خَيْرُ مَدْعُوٍّ وَ خَيْرُ مَسْئُولٍ وَ لِكُلِّ وَادٍ جَائِزَةٌ فَاجْعَلْ جَائِزَتِي فِي مَوْطِنِي هَذَا أَنْ تُقْبِلَنِي عَثْرَتِي وَ تَقَبَّلْ مَعْدِرَتِي أَنْ تَجَاوِزَ عَنِّي خَطِيئَتِي ثُمَّ  
اجْعَلِ التَّقْوَى مِنَ الدُّنْيَا زَادِي

It is Mustahab to collect pebbles for Ramy in Mena from Mash'ar and the sum of seventy pebbles (and collect a little more because some of them may not hit the Jamarat) and it is Mustahab to walk one hundred steps faster when reaching Wadi "Mohassar" in the of Mash'ar to Mena and recite:

اللَّهُمَّ سَلِّمْ لِي عَهْدِي وَ اقْبِلْ تَوْبَتِي وَ أَجِبْ دَعْوَتِي وَ اخْلُفْنِي فِيمَنْ تَرَكْتُ بَعْدِي



## Mustahab actions in Ramy al-Jamarat

- 1- Having ablution while performing Ramy.
- 2- Reciting this prayer while having pebbles in the hand:

1

لِلَّهِ هَذِهِ حَصِيَّاتِي فَأَحْصِيْنِ لِي وَارْفَعُهُنَّ فِي عَمَلِي

- 3- Reciting Takbir with each pebble that is thrown.
- 4- Reciting this prayer after throwing each pebble:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ، اللَّهُمَّ ادْحَرْ عَنِّي الشَّيْطَانَ، اللَّهُمَّ تَصَدِّقْ بِكِتَابِكَ وَ عَلَى سُنَّةِ نَبِيِّكَ  
مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ، اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ لِي حَجًّا مَبْرُورًا، وَ عَمَلًا مَقْبُولًا، وَ سَعْيًا  
مَشْكُورًا، وَ ذَنْبًا مَغْفُورًا

- 5- If it is possible, observe a distance of five or seven and a half meter between the performer and the Jamarah al-Aqaba and stand close to the Jamarah al-Ula and the Jamarah al-Wusta.
- 6- Performing Ramy on al-Jamarah al-Aqaba facing the Jamarah and with back to the Qibla and performing Ramy on the Jamarah al-Ula and al-Jamarah al-Wusta standing with back to Qibla.
- 7- Reciting this prayer after returning Mena to his/her position:

اللَّهُمَّ بِكَ وَثِقْتُ، وَ عَلَيْكَ تَوَكَّلْتُ، فَانِعْمَ الرَّبُّ، وَ نِعْمَ الْمَوْلَى، وَ نِعْمَ النَّصِيرُ

## Mustahab acts of sacrifice are as follows

- 1- If the Hajji has the ability to sacrifice a camel then it is better than sacrificing a cow. If a cow is not possible, he/she can sacrifice a sheep.

2- It is better that the animal of sacrifice to be healthy.

3- It is Mustahab that the camel and cow to be female and for sheep and goat to be male.

4- One should stand near the camel of sacrifice and watch from feet to knees and the person who wants to perform the sacrifice should stand on the right side of the animal, and put the knife or spear or dagger in the hollow of the neck, and recite this prayer while performing Nahr (ritual slaughter of camel) or Zebh:

وَجَهَّتُوجْهِي لِلَّذِي فَطَرَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ حَنِيفًا مُسْلِمًا وَمَا أَنَا مِنَ  
الْمُشْرِكِينَ، إِنَّ صَلَاتِي وَنُسُكِي وَمَحْيَايَ وَمَمَاتِي لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ، لِاشْرِيكَ لَهُ  
وَبِذَلِكَ أُمِرْتُ أَنَا مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ، اللَّهُمَّ مِنْكَ وَ لَكَ، بِسْمِ اللَّهِ بِاللَّهِ وَاللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ،  
اللَّهُمَّ تَقَبَّلْ مِنِّي

5- If the Hajji is capable of performing sacrifice, it is better to perform it personally, but if he cannot do it then he should put his/her hand over the hand of the person who performs sacrifice.

## Mustahab actions in Halq

1- Starting Halq from the right front side of the head and reciting this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ أَعْطِنِي بِكُلِّ شَعْرَةٍ نُورًا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

2- It is Mustahab to bury the hair of the head in the tent in Mena and it is better to cut a part of beard and mustache (above the lips) and the nail, after Halq.

All Mustahab acts of Tawaf of Umrah and its prayer and Sa'y which have been mentioned apply for Hajj also.

It is Mustahab that the pilgrim comes for Tawaf of Hajj on the day of the Eid of Qurban and stands at the door of the mosque and recites this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ اعْنِي عَلَى نُسُكِي، وَ سَلِّمْنِي لَهُ وَسَلِّمَهُ لِي، أَسْأَلُكَ مَسْأَلَةَ الْعَلِيلِ الذَّلِيلِ  
الْمُعْتَرِفِ بِذَنْبِهِ، أَنْتَغْفِرَ لِي ذُنُوبِي، وَ أَنْ تُرْجِعَنِي بِحَاجَتِي، اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي عِبْدُكَ، وَالْبَلَدُ  
بِلَدِّكَ، وَالْبَيْتُ بِبَيْتِكَ، جِئْتُ أَطْلُبُ رَحْمَتَكَ، وَ أَوْمُّ طَاعَتِكَ، مُتَّبِعًا لِأَمْرِكَ،  
رَاضِيًا بِقُدْرَتِكَ، أَسْأَلُكَ مَسْأَلَةَ الْمُضْطَرِّ إِلَيْكَ، الْمُطِيعِ لِأَمْرِكَ، الْمُشْفِقِ مِنْ

عَذَابِكَ، الْخَائِفِ لِعُقُوبَتِكَ، أَنْتُبِلِّغَنِي عَفْوِكَ، وَتُجِيرَنِي مِنَ النَّارِ بِرَحْمَتِكَ

And if it is possible, one should come close to al-Hajar al-Aswad and touch and kiss it, and if kissing is not possible, then he/she should rub the hand on Hajar and kiss his/her hand. If this is not also possible, the pilgrim should stand in front of Hajar and recite Takbir and then perform anything which had been performed in Tawaf of Umrah.

It is Mustahab for the Hajji to stay Mena on the eleventh and twelfth and thirteenth day and not going out of Mena even for performing Mustahab Tawaf, and saying Takbir in Mena after fifteen prayers and after ten prayers in other than Mena, which their first prayer is the noon prayer of the day of the Eid. It is Mustahab and some persons consider it as obligatory, and the best way of saying Takbir is to recite:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَ اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ، اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ وَلِلَّهِ الْحَمْدُ، اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ عَلَى مَا هَدَانَا، اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ عَلَى مَا رَزَقْنَا مِنْ بَهِيمَةِ الْأَنْعَامِ، وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ عَلَى مَا أَبْلَانَا

It is Mustahab to perform Mustahab and obligatory prayers in Masjid al-Khaif while Hajji is in Mena if possible. It is mentioned in Hadith that performing one hundred Rak'ats of prayer in Masjid al-Khaif is equal to seventy years of worship, and the benefit and blessing of reciting سبحان الله in that place is equal to freeing a slave, and the benefits and blessings of reciting لا اله الا الله in there is equal to saving a human and it is the same for saying الحمد لله in there has the benefits and blessings of giving the tax of whole of Iraq to charity in the way of Allah.

### Other rituals and Mustahab acts in great Mecca

- 1- Praying Allah a lot and reciting the holy Qur'an.
- 2- Completing the recitation of the holy Qur'an once.
- 3- Drinking from the water of Zamzam and reciting this prayer after that:

ا

لِلَّهِمَّ اجْعَلْهُ عِلْمًا نَافِعًا وَ رِزْقًا وَاسِعًا وَ شِفَاءً مِنْ كُلِّ دَاءٍ وَ سُقْمٍ

”بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَ بِاللَّهِ وَ الشُّكْرُ لِلَّهِ“.

- 4- Looking at the holy Ka'ba.

5- Performing ten Tawafs in each 24 hours (if it does not disturb other performers of Tawaf) three of them at the beginning of the night, and three of them at the end of the night, and two of them after the dawn and two of them after the noontime.

6- Performing as the number of days of the year while staying in Mecca and if it is not possible, performing fifty-two Tawafs and if it is not possible either, performing as much as it is possible.

7- It is Mustahab for the person who is performing Hajj for the first time to enter the house of Ka'ba and it is Mustahab to have Ghusl and saying this prayer while entering:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّكَ قُلْتَ وَ مَنْ دَخَلَهُ كَانَ آمِنًا فَاْمِنِّي مِنْ عَذَابِ النَّارِ

And then performing two Rak'ats prayer between the two pillars on the red stone, reciting Sura Fussilat after Sura Hamd in the first Rak'at and fifty-five verses of the holy Qur'an from other Suras after Hamd in the second Rak'at.

8- Performing prayer in each corner of Ka'ba and reciting this prayer after that:

اللَّهُمَّ مَنْ تَهَيَّأَ أَوْ تَعَبَّ أَوْ أَعَدَّ أَوْ اسْتَعَدَّ لِيَوْمِ رَجَاءِ رَفْدِهِ وَ جَائِزَتِهِ وَ نَوَافِلِهِ وَ فَوَاضِلِهِ فَالْيَكِيَا سَيِّدِي تَهَيَّئْتِي وَ تَعَبَّيْتِي وَ إِعْدَادِي وَ اسْتِعْدَادِي رَجَاءِ رَفْدِكَ وَ نَوَافِلِكَ وَ جَائِزَتِكَ فَلَا تُخَيِّبِ الْيَوْمَ رَجَائِي يَمَنْ لَا يَخِيْبُ عَلَيْهِ سَائِلٌ وَ لَا يَنْقُصُهُ نَائِلٌ فَإِنِّي لَمْ أَتِكَالْيَوْمَ بِعَمَلٍ صَالِحٍ قَدَّمْتُهُ وَ لَا شَفَاعَةَ مَخْلُوقٍ رَجُوْتُهُ وَلَكِنِّي أَتَيْتُكَ مُقِرًّا بِالظُّلْمِ وَ الْإِسَاءَةِ عَلَى نَفْسِي فَإِنَّهُ لِحُجَّةٍ لِي وَ لَا عُذْرٍ فَاسْأَلُكَ يَا مَنْ هُوَ كَذَلِكَ أَنْ تُصَلِّعَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِهِ وَ تُعْطِينِي مَسْأَلَتِي وَ تَقْلِبْنِي بِرَغْبَتِيوَ لَا تَرُدَّنِي مَجْبُوهَا مَمْنُوعًا وَ لَا خَائِبًا يَا عَظِيمُ يَا عَظِيمًا عَظِيمًا، أَرْجُوكَ لِلْعَظِيمِ أَسْأَلُكَ يَا عَظِيمُ أَنْ تَغْفِرَ لِي الذَّنْبَ الْعَظِيمَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ

And it is Mustahab to say الله اكبر (Allah is the greatest) when leaving Ka'ba.

Then reciting:

اللَّهُمَّ لَا تُجْهِدْ بِلَاءَنَا رَبَّنَا وَ لَا تُشْمِتْ بِنَا أَعْدَاءَنَا فَإِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الضَّارُّ النَّافِعُ

After that one comes down and stands at the right side of the stairs and faces and respects the holy Ka'ba and performs two Rak'ats prayers (Albeit, performing these Mustahab acts is not possible most of the times).

It is Mustahab for person who is leaving Mecca to perform Tawaf al-Widaa', to touch al-Hajar al-Aswad and Rukn Yamani in each round if it is possible, and when reaching Mustajar performing Mustahab acts which have been mentioned before for this place, and then asking for hajjat from Allah and praying to him, after that touching al-Hajar al-Aswad and praising and thanking Allah and sending Salawat to Prophet (s.a.) and his family (a.s.) and thereafter to recite this prayer:

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ

عَبْدِكَ وَرَسُولِكَ وَنَبِيِّكَ وَأَمِينِكَ وَحَبِيبِكَ وَنَجِيِّكَ وَخَيْرَتِكَ مِنْ خَلْقِكَ، اللَّهُمَّ كَمَبَّلَغِ رِسَالَتِكَ وَجَاهِدِ فِي سَبِيلِكَ وَصَدِّعْ بِأَمْرِكَ وَأُودِي فِي جَنبِكَ وَعَبْدِكَ حَتَّى أَتَاهُ الْيَقِينُ، اللَّهُمَّ اقْلِبْنِي مُفْلِحًا مُنْجَاً مُسْتَجَاباً بِأَفْضَلِ مَا يَرْجَعُ بِهِ أَحَدٌ مِنْ وَفْدِكَ مِنَ الْمَغْفِرَةِ وَالْبُرْكَاتِ وَالرَّحْمَةِ وَالرِّضْوَانِ وَالْعَافِيَةِ

It is Mustahab to go out from in front of Rukn Shaami and asking almighty Allah for the opportunity of returning and buying one dirham of date and giving it to a poor person as alms.

Going to the holy city of Medina when returning and performing the pilgrimage of his holiness prophet of Allah (s.a.) and her holiness Saddiqa Tahirah (a.s.) and Imams of Baqi (a.s.) are from affirmed Mustahab acts. r Reciting the following:

السَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ. السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا حَبِيبَ اللَّهِ. السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا صَفْوَةَ اللَّهِ. السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا أَمِينَ اللَّهِ. أَشْهَدُ أَنَّكَ قَدْ نَصَحْتَ لِأُمَّتِكَ وَجَاهَدْتَ فَيَسْبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَعَبَدْتَهُ حَتَّى أَتَاكَ الْيَقِينُ فَجَزَاكَ اللَّهُ أَفْضَلَمَا جَزَى نَبِيًّا عَنْ أُمَّتِهِ اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ أَفْضَلَ مَا صَلَّيْتَ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَآلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ إِنَّكَ حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ

يَا مُتَحَنِّنُ امْتَحَنِكَ اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَكَ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَخْلُقَكَ فَوَجَدَكَ لِمَا امْتَحَنَكَ

صَابِرَةً، وَ زَعَمْنَا أَنَّا لَكَ أَوْلِيَاءُ وَ مُصَدِّقُونَ وَ صَابِرُونَ لِكُلِّ مَا أَتَانَا بِهِ أَبُوكَ وَ  
أَتَانَا بِهِ وَصِيُّهُ، فَإِنَّا نَسْأَلُكَ إِن كُنَّا صَدَقْنَاكَ إِلَّا الْحَقَّنَا بِتَصَدِّقِنَا لَهُمَا لِنُبَشِّرَ  
أَنفُسَنَا بِأَنَّا قَدْ طَهَّرْنَا بِوِلَايَتِكَ

السَّلَامُ عَلَى أَوْلِيَاءِ اللَّهِ وَ أَصْفِيَاءِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى أُمَنَاءِ اللَّهِ أَحِبَّائِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى  
أَنْصَارِ اللَّهِ وَ خُلَفَائِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى مَحَالِّ مَعْرِفَةِ اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى مَسَاكِينِ ذِكْرِ  
اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى مُظْهِرِي أَمْرِ اللَّهِ وَ نَهْيِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى الدُّعَاةِ إِلَى اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى  
الْمُسْتَقْرِينَ فِي مَرْضَاةِ اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى الْمُخْلِصِينَ فِي طَاعَةِ اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى  
الْأَدْلَاءِ عَلَى اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَى الَّذِينَ مَنَوَالَهُمْ فَقَدُوا إِلَى اللَّهِ وَ مَنْ عَادَاهُمْ فَقَدُوا  
عَادَى اللَّهِ، وَ مَنْ عَرَفَهُمْ فَقَدُوا عَرَفَ اللَّهَ وَ مَنْ جَهَلَهُمْ فَقَدُوا جَهَلُوا اللَّهَ، وَ مَنْ اعْتَصَمَ  
بِهِمْ فَقَدُوا اعْتَصَمُوا بِاللَّهِ وَ مَنْتَخَلَّى مِنْهُمْ فَقَدُوا تَخَلَّى مِنَ اللَّهِ، أَشْهَدُ اللَّهُ أَنِّي سَلِّمٌ لِمَنْ  
سَأَلْتُمْ وَ حَرْبٌ لِمَنْ حَارَبْتُمْ، مُؤْمِنٌ بِرَبِّكُمْ وَ عَلَانِيَتِكُمْ، مُفَوِّضٌ فِي ذَلِكَ كُلِّهِ  
إِلَيْكُمْ، لَعَنَ اللَّهُ عَدُوَّ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ مِنَ الْجِنِّ وَ الْإِنْسِ مِنَ الْأَوَّلِينَ وَ الْآخِرِينَ، وَ أَبْرَأُ  
إِلَى اللَّهِ مِنْهُمْ، وَ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِهِ الطَّاهِرِينَ

It is Mustahab that the pilgrim wear his/her best pure clothes, and put on his/her best perfume and goes to the pilgrimage with dignity and when he/she reaches that place, should stand and recite:

يا مَوَالِيَّ يَا أَبْنَاءَ رَسُولِ

اللَّهِ، عَبْدُكُمْ وَ ابْنُ أُمَّتِكُمْ، الدَّلِيلُ بَيْنَ أَيْدِيكُمْ، وَ الْمُضْعِفُ فِي عُلُوِّ قَدْرِكُمْ، وَ الْمُعْتَرِفُ بِحَقِّكُمْ، جَاءَكُمْ مُسْتَجِيرًا بِكُمْ، قاصِدًا لِالْحَرَمِ،  
مُتَقَرِّبًا إِلَى مَقَامِكُمْ، مُتَوَسِّلًا إِلَى اللَّهِ تَعَالَى بِكُمْ، أَدْخُلْ يَا مَوَالِيَّ، أَدْخُلْ يَا أَوْلِيَاءَ اللَّهِ، أَدْخُلْ يَا مَلَائِكَةَ اللَّهِ الْمُحَدِّقِينَ بِهَذَا الْحَرَمِ،  
الْمُقِيمِينَ بِهَذَا الْمَشْهَدِ

And then the Pilgrim should start walking with the right foot and entering with humility, should recite:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ كَبِيرًا

وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ كَثِيرًا، وَ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ بُكْرَةً وَ أُصِيلًا، وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الْفَرْدِ الصَّمَدِ، الْمَاجِدِ الْأَحَدِ، الْمُتَفَضِّلِ الْمَنَّانِ، الْمُتَطَوِّلِ الْحَنَّانِ، الَّذِي مَنَّبَطُولِهِ، وَ سَهَّلَ زِيَارَةَ سَادَاتِي بِإِحْسَانِهِ، وَ لَمَجَّعَلْنِي عَنْ زِيَارَتِهِمْ مَمْنُوعًا، بَلَّ تَطَوَّلَ وَ مَنَحَ

And with back to Qibla and facing the pure tombs, recites:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَيْمَةَ الْهُدَى، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَهْلَ التَّقْوَى، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَيُّهَا الْحُجَّجُ  
عَلَى أَهْلِ الدُّنْيَا، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَيُّهَا الْقَوَّامُ فِي الْبَرِيَّةِ بِالْقِسْطِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَهْلَ  
الصَّفْوَةِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ الرَّسُولِ اللَّهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَهْلَ النَّجْوَى، أَشْهَدُ أَنَّكُمْ قَدْ  
بَلَّغْتُمْ وَ نَصَحْتُمْ وَ صَبَرْتُمْ فِي ذَاتِ اللَّهِ وَ كَذَّبْتُمْ وَ أُسِئَ إِلَيْكُمْ فَغَفَرْتُمْ، وَ أَشْهَدُ  
أَنَّكُمْ الْأَيْمَةُ الرَّاشِدُونَ الْمُهْتَدُونَ، وَ أَنَّ طَاعَتَكُمْ مَفْرُوضَةٌ، وَ أَنَّ قَوْلَكُمْ الصِّدْقُ، وَ  
أَنَّكُمْ دَعَوْتُمْ فَلَمْ تُجَابُوا، وَ أَمَرْتُمْ فَلَمْ تُطَاعُوا، وَ أَنَّكُمْ دَعَائِمُ الدِّينِ وَ أَرْكَانُ الْأَرْضِ،  
لَمْ تَزَالُوا بَعَيْنَ اللَّهِ يَنْسَخُكُمْ مِنْ أَصْلَابِ كُلِّ مَطَهَّرٍ، وَ يَنْقُلُكُمْ مِنْ  
أَرْحَامِ الْمُطَهَّرَاتِ، لَمْ تُدْنِسْكُمْ الْجَاهِلِيَّةُ الْجَهْلَاءُ، وَ لَمْ تُشْرِكْ فِيكُمْ فِتْنُ  
الْأَهْوَاءِ، طَبَّيْتُمْ وَ طَابَ مَنَبَتُكُمْ، مَنْ بَكُمْ عَلَيْنَا دِيَانُ الدِّينِ، فَجَعَلَكُمْ فِي بُيُوتِ أَدْنِ  
اللَّهِ أَنْ تُرْفَعَ وَ يُذَكَرَ فِيهَا سَمُّهُ، وَ جَعَلَ صَلَاتِنَا عَلَيْكُمْ رَحْمَةً لَنَا وَ كَفَّارَةً لِدُنُونِنَا،  
إِذَا اخْتَارَكُمْ اللَّهُ لَنَا، وَ طَيَّبَ خَلْقَنَا بِمَنْ عَلَيْنَا مِنْ وَ لَائِيكُمْ، وَ كُنَّا عِنْدَهُ  
مُسْمِينَ بِعِلْمِكُمْ، مُعْتَرِفِينَ بِتَصَدِيقِنَا إِيَّاكُمْ، وَ هَذَا مَقَامُ مَنْ سَرَفَ وَ أَخْطَأَ وَ  
اسْتَكَانَ وَ أَقْرَبَ بِمَا جَنَى، وَ رَجَبِ مَقَامِهِ الْخَلَاصِ، وَ أَنْ يَسْتَنْقِذَهُ بِكُمْ  
مُسْتَنْقِذِ الْهَلَكِيِّ مِنَ الرَّدِيِّ، فَكُونُوا لِي شُفَعَاءَ، فَقَدْ وَفَدْتَالِيكُمْ إِذَا رَغِبَ عَنْكُمْ أَهْلُ  
الدُّنْيَا، وَ اتَّخَذُوا آيَاتِ اللَّهِ هُزُوءًا، وَ اسْتَكْبَرُوا عَنْهَا. يَا مَنْ هُوَ قَائِمٌ لَيْسَهُو، وَ دَائِمٌ لَا  
يَلْهُو، وَ مُحِيطٌ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ، لَكَ الْمُنْبِئَا وَ فَقَّتَنِي، وَ عَرَفْتَنِي بِمَا أَقَمْتَنِي عَلَيْهِ، إِذْ صَدَّ  
عَنْهُ عِبَادُكَ وَ جَهَلُوا مَعْرِفَتَهُ، وَ اسْتَخَفُّو بِحَقِّهِ، وَ مَالُوا إِلَى سِوَاهُ، فَكَانَتْ الْمِنَّةُ  
مِنْكَ عَلَّمَعَ أَقْوَامَ خَصَمْتَهُمْ بِمَا خَصَمْتَنِي بِهِ، فَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ إِذْ كُنْتُ عِنْدَكَ فِي  
مَقَامِي هَذَا، مَذْكَورًا مَكْتُوبًا، فَلَا تَحْرِمْنِيمَا رَجَوْتُ، وَ لَا تُخَيِّبْنِي فِيمَا دَعَوْتُ،  
بِحُرْمَةِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِهِ الطَّاهِرِينَ، وَ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ

And then pilgrim should perform the pilgrimage of the tomb of Fatima daughter of Asad and Ibrahim Prophet of Allah (s.a.) and other leaders in Baqi and send Salaam and blessings to them and recite Sura Fatiha.

It is proper to perform the pilgrimage of heptad mosques and mosque of Quba and tombs of martyrs of Uhud and when performing the pilgrimage of the tomb of Hamzah, uncle of Prophet (s.a.), who had become martyr in Uhud, should recite:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا عَمَّ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ، صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا خَيْرَ  
الشُّهَدَاءِ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا سَدَّ اللَّهُ وَآسَدَ رَسُولِهِ، أَشْهَدُ أَنَّكَ قَدْ جَاهَدْتَ فِی اللَّهِ  
عَزَّوَجَلَّ، وَجُدْتَ بِنَفْسِكَ، وَنَصَحْتَ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ، وَكُنْتَ فِيمَا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ سُبْحَانَهُ  
رَاغِبًا، بِأَبِي أَنْتَ وَأُمِّي، أَتَيْتُكَ مُتَقَرِّبًا إِلَى اللَّهِ عَزَّوَجَلَّ بِزِيَارَتِكَ، وَ مُتَقَرِّبًا إِلَى  
رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ بِذَلِكَ، رَاغِبًا إِلَيْكَ فِي الشَّفَاعَةِ، أَبْتَغِي بِزِيَارَتِكَ  
خُلَاصَ نَفْسِي مُتَعَوِّذًا بِكَ مِنْ نَارِ اسْتَحَقَّهَا مِثْلِي بِمَا جَنَيْتُ عَلِنَفْسِي، هَارِبًا مِنْ  
ذُنُوبِي الَّتِي احْتَطَبْتُهَا عَلَى ظَهْرِي، فَزَعَا إِلَيْكَ رَجَاءَ رَحْمَةِ رَبِّي، أَتَيْتُكَ مِنْ  
شُقَّةٍ بَعِيدَةٍ، طَالِبًا فَكَأَنَّكَ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ، وَقَدْ أَوْقَرْتُ ظَهْرِي ذُنُوبِي، وَأَتَيْتُ مَا  
أَسْخَطَ رَبِّي، وَلَمْ أَجِدْ أَحَدًا أَفْزَعُ إِلَيْهِ خَيْرًا لِي مِنْكُمْ أَهْلَ بَيْتِ الرَّحْمَةِ، فَكُنْ لِي  
شَفِيعًا يَوْمَ فَقْرِي وَحَاجَتِي، فَقَدَسِرْتُ إِلَيْكَ مَحْزُونًا، وَأَتَيْتُكَ مَكْرُوبًا، وَ  
سَكَبْتُ عُبْرَتِي عِنْدَكَ بَاكِيًا، وَصِرْتُ إِلَيْكَ مُفْرَدًا، وَأَنْتَمِمَّنْ أَمْرَنِي اللَّهُ بِصِلَتِهِ،  
وَحَثَّنِي عَلَى بَرِّهِ، وَدَلَّنِي عَلَى فَضْلِهِ، وَهَدَانِي لِحُبِّهِ، وَرَغَّبَنِي فِی الْوَفَادَةِ إِلَيْهِ، وَ  
أَلْهَمَنِي طَلَبَ الْحَوَائِجِ عِنْدَهُ، أَنْتُمْ أَهْلُ بَيْتٍ لَا يَشْقَى مَنْ تَوَلَّاهُمْ، وَ لَا يَخِيبُ  
مَنَاتَاكُمْ، وَ لَا يَخْسِرُ مَنْ يَهْوَاهُمْ، وَ لَا يَسْعُدُ مَنْ عَادَاكُمْ

And should recite while performing farewell to prophet of Allah (s.a.):

اللَّهُمَّ لِتَجْعَلُهُ آخِرَ الْعَهْدِ مِنْ زِيَارَةِ قَبْرِ نَبِيِّكَ، فَاذْهَبِي قَبْلَ ذَلِكَ فَإِنِّي أَشْهَدُ فِی  
مَمَاتِي عَلَى مَا شَهِدْتُ عَلَيْهِ فِی حَيَاتِي، أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ، وَأَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُكَ وَ  
رَسُولُكَ، وَأَنَّكَ قَدْ اخْتَرْتَهُ مِنْ خَلْقِكَ، ثُمَّ اخْتَرْتَهُ مِنْ أَهْلِ بَيْتِهِ الْأَيْمَّةِ  
الطَّاهِرِينَ، الَّذِينَ أَذْهَبْتَ عَنْهُمْ الرَّجْسَ وَ طَهَّرْتَهُمْ تَطْهِيرًا، فَاحْشُرْنَا مَعَهُمْ، وَ فِی  
زُمْرَتِهِمْ، وَ تَحْتَ لِوَاءِهِمْ، وَ لِتُفَرِّقَ بَيْنَنَا وَ بَيْنَهُمْ فِی الدُّنْيَا وَ الْآخِرَةِ، يَا رَحِمَ  
الرَّاحِمِينَ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ، لَا جَعَلَهُ اللَّهُ آخِرَ تَسْلِيمِي عَلَيْكَ



And while performing the pilgrimage of tombs of Imams, in Baqi (a.s.) after the farewell to the prophet of Allah (s.a.), then perform farewell to them and recite:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ أَيْمَةَ الْهُدَى وَرَحْمَةَ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتِهِ، اسْتَوْدِعُكُمْ اللَّهُ وَأَقْرَأُ عَلَيْكُمْ  
السَّلَامَ، آمَنَّا بِاللَّهِ وَبِالرَّسُولِ وَبِمَا جِئْتُمْ بِهِ وَدَلَّلْتُمْ عَلَيْهِ، اللَّهُمَّ فَاكْتُبْنَا مَعَ  
الشَّاهِدِينَ

And then recite:

وَلتَجْعَلْهُ آخِرَ الْعَهْدِ مِنْ زِيَارَتِهِمْ بِرَحْمَتِكَ يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ، السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَ  
رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي لَيْسَ لِقَضَائِهِ دَافِعٌ، وَ لَا لِعَطَائِهِ مَانِعٌ، وَ لَا كَصُنْعِهِ صُنْعُ صَانِعٍ، وَ  
هُوَ الْجَوَادُ الْوَاسِعُ فَطَرَ أَجْنَاسَ الْبِدَائِعِ، وَ اتَّقَنَ بِحِكْمَتِهِ الصَّنَائِعَ، لَا تَخْفَى عَلَيْهِ  
الطَّلَائِعُ، وَ لَا تَضِيغُ عِنْدَهُ الْوَدَائِعُ، جَازَى كُلَّ صَانِعٍ، وَ رَأَيْتُ كُلَّ قَانِعٍ، وَ رَاحِمٍ  
كُلَّ ضَارِعٍ، وَ مُنْزِلُ الْمَنَافِعِ، وَ الْكِتَابِ الْجَامِعِ، بِالنُّورِ السَّاطِعِ، وَ هُوَ لِلدَّعَوَاتِ  
سَامِعٌ، وَ لِلْكُرْبَاتِ دَافِعٌ، وَ لِلدَّرَجَاتِ رَافِعٌ، وَ لِلجَبَابِرَةِ قَامِعٌ، فَلَا إِلَهَ غَيْرُهُ وَ  
لَا شَيْءَ يَعْدِلُهُ، وَ لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ، وَ هُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْبَصِيرُ، اللَّطِيفُ الْخَبِيرُ، وَ هُوَ  
عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَرْغَبُ إِلَيْكَ، وَ أَشْهَدُ بِالرُّبُوبِيَّةِ لَكَ، مُقِرٌّ بِأَنَّكَ رَبِّي، وَ أَنَّ إِلَيْكَ مَرَدِّي،  
إِبْتَدَأْتَنِي بِنِعْمَتِكَ قَبْلَ أَنْ أَكُونَ شَيْئًا مَذْكُورًا، وَ خَلَقْتَنِي مِنَ التُّرَابِ، ثُمَّ أَسْكَنْتَنِي  
الْأَصْلَابَ، آمِنًا لِرَيْبِ الْمُنُونِ، وَ اخْتِلَافِ الدُّهُورِ وَ السِّنِينَ، فَلَمْ أَزَلْ طَاعِنًا مِنْ  
صُلْبِ إِلَى رَحِمٍ فِي تَقَادُمِ مِنَ الْآيَامِ الْمَاضِيَةِ، وَ الْقُرُونِ الْخَالِيَةِ، لَمْ تُخْرِجْنِي  
لِرَأْفَتِكَ بِي، وَ لَطْفِكَ لِي، وَ إِحْسَانِكَ إِلَيَّ فِي دَوْلَةِ أَيْمَةِ الْكُفْرِ، الَّذِينَ نَقَضُوا  
عَهْدَكَ، وَ كَذَّبُوا رُسُلَكَ، لَكِنَّكَ أَخْرَجْتَنِي لِلَّذِي سَبَقَ لِي مِنَ الْهُدَى، الَّذِي لَهُ  
يَسَّرْتَنِي، وَ فِيهِ أَنْشَأْتَنِي، وَ مِنْ قَبْلِ ذَلِكَ رُوِّفْتَ بِي، بِجَمِيلِ صُنْعِكَ، وَ سَوَابِغِ

نِعْمِكَ، فَأَبْتَدَعْتَ خَلْقِي مِنْ مَنِيَّ يُمْنِي، وَ أَسْكَنْتَنِي فِي ظُلُمَاتِ ثَلَاثٍ، بَيْنَ لَحْمٍ وَ  
دَمٍ وَ جِلْدٍ، لَمْ تُشْهِدْنِي خَلْقِي، وَ لَمْ تَجْعَلِ إِلَيَّ شَيْئاً مِنْ أَمْرِي، ثُمَّ أَخْرَجْتَنِي لِلَّذِي  
سَبَقَ لِي مِنَ الْهُدَى إِلَى الدُّنْيَا تَاماً سَوِيّاً، وَ حَفَظْتَنِي فِي الْمَهْدِ طِفْلاً صَبِيّاً، وَ  
رَزَقْتَنِي مِنَ الْغِذَاءِ لَبَنَ مَرِيّاً، وَ عَطَفْتَ عَلَيَّ قُلُوبَ الْحَوَاضِنِ، وَ كَفَلْتَنِي الْأُمَّهَاتِ  
الرُّوَاحِمَ، وَ كَلَّاتَنِي مِنْ طَوَارِقِ الْجَانِّ، وَ سَلَّمْتَنِي مِنَ الزِّيَادَةِ وَ النُّقْصَانِ،  
فَتَعَالَيْتَ يَا رَحِيمُ يَا رَحْمَنُ، حَتَّى إِذَا اسْتَهَلَّتُ نَاطِقاً بِالْكَلامِ، أَتَمَمْتَ عَلَيَّ سَوَابِغَ  
الْإِنْعَامِ، وَ رَبَّيْتَنِي زَائِداً فِي كُلِّ عَامٍ، حَتَّى إِذَا اكْتَمَلَتْ فِطْرَتِي، وَ اعْتَدَلْتُ مَرَّتِي،  
أَوْجَبْتَ عَلَيَّ حُجَّتَكَ بِأَنْ أَلْهَمْتَنِي مَعْرِفَتَكَ، وَ رَوَّعْتَنِي بِعَجَائِبِ حِكْمَتِكَ، وَ  
أَيَقَظْتَنِي لِمَا ذَرَأْتَ فِي سَمَاءِكَ وَ أَرْضِكَ مِنْ بَدَائِعِ خَلْقِكَ، وَ نَبَّهْتَنِي لِشُكْرِكَ وَ  
ذِكْرِكَ، وَ أَوْجَبْتَ عَلَيَّ طَاعَتَكَ وَ عِبَادَتَكَ وَ فَهَمْتَنِي مَا جَاءَتْ بِهِ رُسُلُكَ، وَ  
يَسَّرْتَ لِي تَقَبُّلَ مَرْضَاتِكَ، وَ مَنَنْتَ عَلَيَّ فِي جَمِيعِ ذَلِكَ بِعَوْنِكَ وَ لَطْفِكَ، ثُمَّ إِذْ  
خَلَقْتَنِي مِنْ خَيْرِ الثَّرَى، وَ لَمْ تَرْضَ لِي يَا إِلَهِي نِعْمَةً دُونَ أُخْرَى، وَ رَزَقْتَنِي مِنْ  
أَنْوَاعِ الْمَعَاشِ، وَ صُنُوفِ الرِّيَاشِ، بِمَنِّكَ الْعَظِيمِ الْأَعْظَمِ عَلَيَّ، وَ إِحْسَانِكَ  
الْقَدِيمِ إِلَيَّ، حَتَّى إِذَا أَتَمَمْتَ عَلَيَّ جَمِيعَ النِّعَمِ، وَ صَرَفْتَ عَنِّي كُلَّ النِّقَمِ، لَمْ  
يَمْنَعَكَ جَهْلِي وَ جُرْأَتِي عَلَيْكَ أَنْ دَلَلْتَنِي إِلَى مَا يُقَرِّبُنِي إِلَيْكَ، وَ وَفَّقْتَنِي لِمَا  
يُزِلُّنِي لَدَيْكَ، فَإِنْ دَعَوْتُكَ أَجَبْتَنِي وَ إِنْ سَأَلْتُكَ أَعْطَيْتَنِي، وَ إِنْ أَطَعْتُكَ  
شَكَرْتَنِي وَ إِنْ شَكَرْتُكَ زِدْتَنِي، كُلُّ ذَلِكَ إِكْمَالٌ لِإِنْعَمِكَ عَلَيَّ، وَ إِحْسَانِكَ إِلَيَّ،  
فَسُبْحَانَكَ سُبْحَانَكَ مِنْ مُبَدِئِ مُعِيدِ حَمِيدِ مَجِيدِ، وَ تَقَدَّسَتْ أَسْمَاؤُكَ، وَ  
عَظُمَتْ أَلْوَاكُ، فَأَيُّ نِعْمِكَ يَا إِلَهِي أَحْصِي عَدداً وَ ذِكْراً، أَمْ أَيْ عَطَايَاكَ أَقْوَمُ  
بِهَا شُكْراً، وَ هِيَ يَا رَبِّ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ أَنْ يُحْصِيَهَا الْعَادُّونَ، أَوْ يَبْلُغَ عِلْماً بِهَا  
الْحَافِظُونَ، ثُمَّ مَا صَرَفْتَ وَ دَرَأْتَ عَنِّي اللَّهُمَّ مِنَ الضَّرِّ وَ الضَّرَّاءِ أَكْثَرُ مِمَّا ظَهَرَ  
لِي مِنَ الْعَافِيَةِ وَ السَّرَّاءِ، وَ أَنَا أَشْهَدُ يَا إِلَهِي بِحَقِيقَةِ إِيمَانِي، وَ عَقْدِ عَزْمَاتِي  
يَقِينِي، وَ خَالِصِ صَرِيحِ تَوْحِيدِي، وَ بَاطِنِ مَكْنُونِ ضَمِيرِي، وَ عَلَاقِقِ مَجَارِي  
نُورِ بَصَرِي، وَ أَسَارِيرِ صَفْحَةِ جَبِينِي وَ خُرْقِ مَسَارِبِ نَفْسِي، وَ خِذَارِيفِ مَارِنِ  
عَرْنِينِي، وَ مَسَارِبِ سِمَاخِ سَمْعِي، وَ مَا ضَمَمْتُ وَ أَطَبَقْتُ عَلَيْهِ شَفَتَايَ، وَ  
حَرَكَاتِ لَفْظِ لِسَانِي، وَ مَغْرَزِ حَنَكِ فَمِي وَ فَكِّي، وَ مَنَابِتِ أَضْرَاسِي، وَ مَسَاغِ  
مَطْعَمِي وَ مَشْرَبِي، وَ حِمَالَةِ أُمِّ رَأْسِي، وَ بُلُوعِ فَاوِغِ حَبَائِلِ عُنُقِي، وَ مَا اشْتَمَلَتْ  
عَلَيْهِ تَامُورُ صَدْرِي، وَ حِمَائِلُ حَبْلِ وَتِينِي، وَ نِيَاطِ حِجَابِ قَلْبِي، وَ أَفْلَازِ حَوَاشِي  
كَبِدِي، وَ مَا حَوَتْهُ شَرَّاسِيفُ أَضْلَاعِي، وَ حِقَاقُ مَفَاصِلِي، وَ قَبْضُ عَوَامِلِي، وَ  
أَطْرَافُ أَنَامِلِي، وَ لَحْمِي، وَ دَمِي، وَ شَعْرِي، وَ بَشْرِي، وَ عَصْبِي، وَ قَصْبِي، وَ

عِظَامِي، وَ مُخِّي وَ عُرْوَقِي، وَ جَمِيعُ جَوَارِحِي، وَ مَا انْتَسَجَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ أَيَّامَ  
 رِضَاعِي، وَ مَا أَقَلَّتْ الْأَرْضُ مِنِّي، وَ نَوْمِي، وَ يَقْظَتِي، وَ سُكُونِي، وَ حَرَكَاتِ  
 رُكُوعِي وَ سُجُودِي، أَنْ لَوْ حَاوَلْتُ وَ اجْتَهَدْتُ مَدَى الْأَعْصَارِ وَ الْأَحْقَابِ لَوْ  
 عُمِرْتُهَا أَنْ أُودِيَ شُكْرَ وَاحِدَةٍ مِنْ أَنْعَمِكَ مَا اسْتَطَعْتُ ذَلِكَ إِلَّا بِمَنِّكَ الْمَوْجِبِ  
 عَلَيَّ بِهٍ شُكْرُكَ أَبَدًا جَدِيدًا، وَ ثَنَاءً طَارِفَ عَتِيدًا، أَجَلٌ، وَ لَوْ حَرَصْتُ أَنَا وَ  
 الْعَادُونَ مِنْ أَنَامِكَ أَنْ نُحْصِيَ مَدَى إِنْعَامِكَ سَالِفِهِ وَ آئِفِهِ مَا حَصَرْنَاهُ عَدَدًا، وَ  
 لَا أَحْصَيْنَاهُ أَمَدًا، هَيْهَاتَ أَنِي ذَلِكَ، وَ أَنْتَ الْمُخْبِرُ فِي كِتَابِكَ النَّاطِقُ، وَ النَّبِيُّ  
 الصَّادِقُ «وَ إِنْ تَعُدُّوْا نِعْمَةَ اللَّهِ لَا تُحْصُوهَا». صَدَقَ كِتَابُكَ. اللَّهُمَّ وَ أَنْبَاؤُكَ، وَ  
 بَلَّغْتَ أَنْبِيَائُكَ وَ رُسُلَكَ مَا أَنْزَلْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنْ وَحْيِكَ، وَ شَرَعْتَ لَهُمْ وَ بِهِمْ مِنْ  
 دِينِكَ، غَيْرَ أَنِّي يَا إِلَهِي أَشْهَدُ بِجَهْدِي وَ جَدِّي، وَ مَبْلَغِ طَاقَتِي وَ وُسْعِي، وَ أَقُولُ  
 مُؤْمِنًا مُوقِنًا: الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي لَمْ يَتَّخِذْ وَلَدًا فَيَكُونَ مَورُوثًا، وَ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ شَرِيكٌ  
 فِي مُلْكِهِ فَيُضَادَّهُ فِيمَا ابْتَدَعَ، وَ لَا وِلِيٌّ مِنْ الذُّلِّ فَيُرْفِدُهُ فِيمَا صَنَعَ، فَسُبْحَانَهُ  
 سُبْحَانَهُ، لَوْ كَانَ فِيهِمْ آلِهَةٌ إِلَّا اللَّهُ لَفَسَدَتَا وَ تَفَطَّرَتَا، سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ الْوَاحِدِ الْوَاحِدِ  
 الصَّمَدِ الَّذِي لَمْ يَلِدْ وَ لَمْ يُولَدْ، وَ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ حَمْدًا يُعَادِلُ حَمْدَ مَلَائِكَتِهِ الْمُقَرَّبِينَ، وَ أَنْبِيَائِهِ الْمُرْسَلِينَ، وَ صَلَّى اللَّهُ  
 عَلَى خَيْرَتِهِ مُحَمَّدٍ خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ وَ آلِهِ الطَّيِّبِينَ الطَّاهِرِينَ الْمُخْلِصِينَ وَ سَلَّمَ

And in this time Imam Hussein (a.s.) began to pray and asked from almighty Allah and said with eyes full of tears:

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْنِي أَخْشَاكَ كَأَنِّي أَرَاكَ وَأَسْعِدْنِي بِتَقْوَاكَ وَ ل تَشْقِنِي بِمَعْصِيَتِكَ وَ  
 خِرْلِي فِي قَضَائِكَ وَ بَارِكْ لِي فِي قَدْرِكَ حَتَّى لَا أَحِبَّ تَعْجِيلَ مَا أَخْرَتْ وَ لَا  
 تَأْخِيرَ مَا عَجَّلْتَ اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْ غِنَايَ فِي نَفْسِي وَ الْيَقِينَ فِي قَلْبِي وَ الْإِخْلَاصَ فِي  
 عَمَلِي وَ النُّورَ فِي بَصَرِي وَ الْبَصِيرَةَ فِي دِينِي وَ مَتَّعْنِي بِجَوَارِحِي وَ اجْعَلْ سَمْعِي  
 وَ بَصَرِي الْوَارِثِينَ مِنِّي وَ انصُرْنِي عَلَى مَنْ ظَلَمَنِي وَ ارْنِي فِيهِ ثَارِي وَ مَا رَبِّي وَ أَقْرَبُ  
 بِذَلِكَ عَيْنِي. اللَّهُمَّ اكشِفْ كُرْبَتِي وَ اسْتُرْ عَوْرَتِي وَ اغْفِرْ لِي خَطِيئَتِي وَ اخْسَأْ  
 شَيْطَانِي وَ فُكِّ رِهَانِي وَ اجْعَلْ لِي يَا إِلَهِي الدَّرَجَةَ الْعُلْيَا فِي الْآخِرَةِ وَ الْأُولَى اللَّهُمَّ

لَكَ الْحَمْدُ كَمَا خَلَقْتَنِي فَجَعَلْتَنِي سَمِيعاً بَصِيراً وَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ كَمَا خَلَقْتَنِي  
فَجَعَلْتَنِي خَلْقاً سَوِيّاً رَحْمَةً بِي وَ قَدْ كُنْتُ عَنْ خَلْقِي غَنِيّاً رَبِّ بِمَا بَرَأْتَنِي فَعَدَلْتَ  
فَطَرْتَنِي، رَبِّ بِمَا أَنْشَأْتَنِي فَأَحْسَنْتَ صُورَتِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَحْسَنْتَ إِلَيَّ وَ فِي نَفْسِي  
عَافِيَتِي رَبِّ بِمَا كَلَّاتَنِي وَ وَفَّقْتَنِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيَّ فَهَدَيْتَنِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَوْلَيْتَنِي  
وَ مِنْ كُلِّ خَيْرٍ أَعْطَيْتَنِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَطْعَمْتَنِي وَ سَقَيْتَنِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَغْنَيْتَنِي وَأَقْنَيْتَنِي  
رَبِّ بِمَا أَعَنْتَنِي وَأَعَزَّزْتَنِي رَبِّ بِمَا أَلْبَسْتَنِي مِنْ سِتْرِكَ الصَّافِي وَيَسَّرْتَ لِي مِنْ  
صُنْعِكَ الْكَافِي صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ أَعِنِّي عَلَى بَوَائِقِ الدُّهُورِ وَ صُرُوفِ  
اللَّيَالِي وَ الْآيَامِ وَنَجِّنِي مِنْ أَهْوَالِ الدُّنْيَا وَكُرْبَاتِ الْآخِرَةِ وَكَفِّنِي شَرَّ مَا يَعْمَلُ  
الظَّالِمُونَ فِي الْأَرْضِ اللَّهُمَّ مَا أَخَافُ فَكَفِّنِي وَ مَا أَحْذَرُ فَقِنِّي وَ فِي نَفْسِي وَ  
دِينِي فَاحْرُسْنِي وَ فِي سَفْرِي فَاحْفَظْنِي وَ فِي أَهْلِي وَ مَالِي فَاخْلُفْنِي وَ فِيمَا  
رَزَقْتَنِي فَبَارِكْ لِي وَ فِي نَفْسِي فَذَلِّلْنِي وَ فِي أَعْيُنِ النَّاسِ فَعَظِّمْنِي وَ مِنْ شَرِّ الْجِنِّ  
وَ الْإِنْسِ فَسَلِّمْنِي وَبِذُنُوبِي فَلَا تَفْضَحْنِي وَ بِسَرِيرَتِي فَلَا تُخْزِنِي وَ بِعَمَلِي فَلَا  
تَبْتَلْنِي وَ نِعْمِكَ فَلَا تَسْلُبْنِي وَإِلَى غَيْرِكَ فَلَا تَكْلُنِي إِلَهِي إِلَى مَنْ تَكْلُنِي إِلَهِي قَرِيبٌ  
فَيَقْطَعُنِي أَمْ إِلَى بَعِيدٍ فَيَتَجَهَّمُنِي أَمْ إِلَى الْمُسْتَضْعِفِينَ لِي، وَأَنْتَ رَبِّي وَ مَلِيكُ  
أَمْرِي، أَشْكُوا إِلَيْكَ غُرْبَتِي وَ بَعْدَ دَارِي، وَ هَوَانِي عَلَى مَنْ مَلَكَتُهُ أَمْرِي إِلَهِي فَلَا  
تُحِلِّ عَلَيَّ غَضَبَكَ فَإِنْ لَمْ تَكُنْ غَضِبْتَ عَلَيَّ فَلَا أَبَالِي سِوَاكَ سُبْحَانَكَ غَيْرَ أَنْ  
عَافَيْتَكَ أَوْسَعُ لِي، فَاسْأَلُكَ يَا رَبِّ بِنُورِ وَجْهِكَ الَّذِي أَشْرَقَتْ لَهُ الْأَرْضُ  
وَ السَّمَاوَاتُ وَ كُشِفَتْ بِهِ الظُّلُمَاتُ وَ صَلِّحْ بِهِ أُمْرَ الْأَوَّلِينَ وَ الْآخِرِينَ، أَنْ لَا تُمِيتَنِي  
عَلَى غَضَبِكَ وَ لَا تُنْزِلَ بِي سَخَطَكَ، لَكَ الْعُتْبَى لَكَ الْعُتْبَى حَتَّى تَرْضَى قَبْلَ  
ذَلِكَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ، رَبُّ الْبَلَدِ الْحَرَامِ، وَالْمَشْعَرِ الْحَرَامِ، وَالْبَيْتِ الْعَتِيقِ الَّذِي  
أَحَلَّتْهُ الْبَرَكَةُ، وَ جَعَلْتَهُ لِلنَّاسِ أَمْنًا، يَا مَنْ عَفَّ عَنْ عَظِيمِ الذُّنُوبِ بِحِلْمِهِ، يَا مَنْ  
أَسْبَغَ النِّعْمَاءَ بِفَضْلِهِ، يَا مَنْ أَعْطَى الْجَزِيلَ بِكَرَمِهِ، يَا عُدَّتِي فِي شِدَّتِي، يَا  
صَاحِبِي فِي وَحْدَتِي، يَا غِيَاثِي فِي كُرْبَتِي، يَا وَلِيِّي فِي نِعْمَتِي. يَا إِلَهِي وَآلَهَ أَبَائِي  
إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَاسْمَعِيلَ وَاسْحَقَ وَيَعْقُوبَ وَ رَبِّ جِبْرَائِيلَ وَ مِيكَائِيلَ وَ إِسْرَافِيلَ، وَ رَبِّ  
مُحَمَّدٍ خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ وَ إِلَهِي الْمُنْتَجِبِينَ، وَ مُنْزِلَ التَّوْرَةِ وَ الْإِنْجِيلِ وَ الزُّبُورِ  
وَ الْفُرْقَانِ، وَ مُنْزِلَ كَهيعص وَ طه وَ يس وَ الْقُرْآنِ الْحَكِيمِ، أَنْتَ كَهْفِي حِينَ تُعِينِي  
الْمَذَاهِبُ فِي سَعَتِهَا وَ تَضِيقُ بِي الْأَرْضُ بِرُحْبِهَا وَ لَوْ لَا رَحْمَتُكَ لَكُنْتُ مِنَ  
الْهَالِكِينَ، وَ أَنْتَ مُقِيلُ عَثْرَتِي، وَ لَوْ لَا سِتْرُكَ إِيَّايَ لَكُنْتُ مِنَ الْمَفْضُوحِينَ، وَ  
أَنْتَ مُؤَيِّدِي بِالنَّصْرِ عَلَى أَعْدَائِي، وَ لَوْ لَا نَصْرُكَ إِيَّايَ لَكُنْتُ مِنَ الْمَغْلُوبِينَ، يَا  
مَنْ خَصَّ نَفْسَهُ بِالسُّمُومِ وَ الرَّفْعَةِ، فَأَوْلِيَاةُ بَعْزِهِ يَعْتَزُونَ بِى مَنْ جَعَلَتْ لَهُ الْمُلُوكُ

نِيرَ الْمَذَلَّةِ عَلَى أَعْنَاقِهِمْ، فَهُمْ مِنْ سَطَوَاتِهِ خَائِفُونَ، يَعْلَمُ خَائِنَةَ الْأَعْيُنِ وَمَنْ تُخْفِي  
الْصُّدُورُ، وَغَيْبَ مَا تَأْتِي بِهِ الْأَزْمِنَةُ وَالْدُّهُورُ يَا مَنْ لَا يَعْلَمُ كَيْفَ هُوَ إِلَّا هُوَ، يَا مَنْ  
لَا يَعْلَمُ مَا هُوَ إِلَّا هُوَ يَا مَنْ لَا يَعْلَمُهُ إِلَّا هُوَ، يَا مَنْ كَبَسَ الْأَرْضَ عَلَى الْمَاءِ وَ  
سَدَّ الْهَوَاءَ بِالسَّمَاءِ يَا مَنْ لَهُ أَكْرَمُ الْأَسْمَاءِ يَا ذَا الْمَعْرُوفِ الَّذِي لَا يَنْقَطِعُ أَبَدًا يَا  
مُقَيِّضَ الرَّكْبِ لِيُوسُفَ فِي الْبَلَدِ الْقَفْرِ وَ مُخْرِجَهُ مِنَ الْجُبِّ وَ جَاعِلُهُ بَعْدَ  
الْعُبُودِيَّةِ مَلِكًا يَا رَادَّهُ عَلَى يَعْقُوبَ بَعْدَ أَنْ أَبْيَضَتْ عَيْنَاهُ مِنَ الْحُزْنِ فَهُوَ كَظِيمٌ، يَا  
كَاشِفَ الضَّرِّ وَ الْبَلْوَى عَنِ أَيُّوبَ وَ يَا مُمَسِّكَ يَدَيْ إِبْرَاهِيمَ عَنِ ذَبْحِ ابْنِهِ بَعْدَ كِبَرِ  
سِنِّهِ وَ فَنَاءِ عُمُرِهِ يَا مَنْ اسْتَجَابَ لِزَكَرِيَّا فَوَهَبَ لَهُ يَحْيَى وَ لَمْ يَدْعُهُ فَرْدٌ وَحِيدًا يَا  
مَنْ أَخْرَجَ يُونُسَ مِنْ بَطْنِ الْحُوتِ يَا مَنْ فَلَقَ الْبَحْرَ لِبْنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ فَأَنْجَاهُمْ، وَ  
جَعَلَ فِرْعَوْنَ وَ جُنُودَهُ مِنَ الْمُغْرَقِينَ، يَا مَنْ أَرْسَلَ الرِّيَّاحَ مُبَشِّرَاتٍ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ  
رَحْمَتِهِ يَا مَنْ لَمْ يَعْجَلْ عَلَى مَنْ عَصَاهُ مِنْ خَلْقِهِ يَا مَنْ اسْتَنْقَذَ السَّحْرَةَ مِنْ بَعْدِ  
طُولِ الْجُحُودِ وَ قَدْ غَدَوْا فِي نِعْمَتِهِ يَأْكُلُونَ رِزْقَهُ وَ يَعْبُدُونَ غَيْرَهُ، وَ قَدْ حَادَوْهُ وَ  
نَادَوْهُ وَ كَذَّبُوا رُسُلَهُ يَا اللَّهُ يَا اللَّهُ يَا بَدِيءُ يَا بَدِيعًا لَا نِدَّ لَكَ، يَا دَائِمًا لَا نِفَادَ لَكَ يَا  
حَيًّا حِينَ لَا حَيٍّ، يَا مُحْيِيَ الْمَوْتَى يَا مَنْ هُوَ قَائِمٌ عَلَى كُلِّ نَفْسٍ بِمَا كَسَبَتْ يَا مَنْ  
قَالَ لَهُ شُكْرِي فَلَمْ يَحْرِمْنِي وَ عَظَّمْتَ خَطِيئَتِي فَلَمْ يَفْضَحْنِي وَ رَأَى عَلَى  
الْمَعَاصِي فَلَمْ يَشْهَرْنِي يَا مَنْ حَفِظَنِي فِي صِغَرِي يَا مَنْ رَزَقَنِي فِي كِبَرِي يَا مَنْ  
أَيَادِيهِ عِنْدِي لَا تُحْصَى وَ نِعْمُهُ لَا تُجَازَى يَا مَنْ عَارَضَنِي بِالْخَيْرِ وَ الْإِحْسَانِ وَ  
عَارَضْتُهُ بِالْإِسَاءَةِ وَ الْعِصْيَانِ، يَا مَنْ هَدَانِي لِلْإِيمَانِ مِنْ قَبْلِ أَنْ أَعْرِفَ شُكْرَ  
الْإِمْتِنَانِ يَا مَنْ دَعَوْتُهُ مَرِيضًا فَشَفَانِي، وَ عُرِيَانًا فَكَسَانِي، وَ جَائِعًا فَأَشْبَعَنِي، وَ  
عَطْشَانًا فَأَرَوَانِي، وَ ذَلِيلًا فَأَعَزَّنِي، وَ جَاهِلًا فَعَرَّفَنِي وَ وَحِيدًا فَكَثَّرَنِي، وَ غَائِبًا  
فَرَدَّنِي، وَ مُقْلًا فَأَغْنَانِي وَ مُنْتَصِرًا فَنَصَرَنِي وَ غَنِيًّا فَلَمْ يَسْلُبْنِي وَ أَمْسَكْتُ عَنْ  
جَمِيعِ ذَلِكَ فَابْتَدَأَنِي فَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ وَ الشُّكْرُ يَا مَنْ أَقَالَ عَثْرَتِي وَ نَفَسَ كُرْبَتِي وَ  
أَجَابَ دَعْوَتِي، وَ سَتَرَ عَوْرَتِي وَ غَفَرَ ذُنُوبِي، وَ بَلَّغَنِي طَلِبَتِي، وَ نَصَرَنِي عَلَى  
عَدُوِّي، وَ إِنْ أَعَدَّ نِعْمَكَ وَ مَنِّكَ وَ كَرَامَتِكَ لَأُحْصِيهَا يَا مَوْلَايَ أَنْتَ الَّذِي  
مَنَنْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَنْعَمْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَحْسَنْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَجْمَلْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي  
أَفْضَلْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَكْمَلْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي رَزَقْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي وَفَّقْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي  
أَعْطَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَغْنَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَقْنَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي آوَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي  
كَفَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي هَدَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي عَصَمْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي سَتَرْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي  
غَفَرْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَقْلَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي مَكَّنْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَعَزَّزْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَعْنَيْتَ،  
أَنْتَ الَّذِي عَضَدْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَيَّدْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي نَصَرْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي شَفَيْتَ، أَنْتَ

الَّذِي عَافَيْتَ، أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَكْرَمْتَ، تَبَارَكْتَ وَتَعَالَيْتَ، فَالْحَمْدُ دَائِمًا وَلَكَ  
الشُّكْرُ وَاصِبًا أَبَدًا. ثُمَّ أَنَا يَا إِلَهِي الْمُعْتَرِفُ بِذُنُوبِي فَاغْفِرْهَا لِي، أَنَا الَّذِي أَسَأْتُ،  
أَنَا الَّذِي أَخْطَأْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي هَمَمْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي جَهَلْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي غَفَلْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي  
سَهَوْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي اعْتَمَدْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي تَعَمَّدْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي وَعَدْتُ، وَأَنَا الَّذِي  
أَخْلَفْتُ، أَنْ الَّذِي نَكَّثْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي أَقْرَرْتُ، أَنَا الَّذِي اعْتَرَفْتُ بِنِعْمَتِكَ عَلَيَّ  
وَعِنْدِي، وَأَبُوءُ بِذُنُوبِي فَاغْفِرْهَا لِي، يَا مَنْ لَا تَضُرُّهُ ذُنُوبُ عِبَادِهِ، وَهُوَ الْغَنِيُّ عَنْ  
طَاعَتِهِمْ، وَالْمُؤَقَّقُ مِنْ عَمَلٍ صَالِحًا مِنْهُمْ بِمَعُونَتِهِ وَرَحْمَتِهِ، فَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَ  
سَيِّدِي، إِلَهِي أَمَرْتَنِي فَعَصَيْتُكَ وَنَهَيْتَنِي فَأَرْتَكِبْتُ نَهْيَكَ، فَأَصْبَحْتُ لَا ذَا بَرَاءَةَ  
لِي فَأَعْتَذِرُ، وَلَا ذَا قُوَّةَ فَاذْهَبْ، فَبِأَيِّ شَيْءٍ أَسْتَقْبِلُكَ يَا مَوْلَايَ، أَسْمَعِي أَمْ  
بِبَصَرِي أَمْ بِلِسَانِي أَمْ بِيَدِي أَمْ بِرِجْلِي، أَلَيْسَ كُلُّهَا نِعْمَكَ عِنْدِي وَبِكُلِّهَا  
عَصِيَّتُكَ، يَا مَوْلَايَ فَالْحُجَّةُ وَالسَّبِيلُ عَلَيَّ، يَا مَنْ سَتَرْتَنِي مِنَ الْآبَاءِ وَالْأُمَّهَاتِ  
أَنْ يَزْجُرُونِي، وَمِنَ الْعَشَائِرِ وَالْإِخْوَانِ أَنْ يُعَيِّرُونِي، وَمِنَ السَّلَاطِينِ أَنْ  
يُعَاقِبُونِي وَ لَوْ أَطَّلَعُوا يَا مَوْلَايَ عَلَيَّ مَا أَطَّلَعْتَ عَلَيْهِ مِنِّي إِذَا مَا أَنْظَرُونِي، وَ  
لَرَفَضُونِي وَ قَطَعُونِي فَهَا أَنَا ذَا يَا إِلَهِي بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ يَا سَيِّدِي خَاضِعٌ ذَلِيلٌ حَاصِرٌ  
حَقِيرٌ، لَا ذُوبَرَاءَةَ فَأَعْتَذِرُ وَ لَوْ ذُو قُوَّةَ فَاذْهَبْ وَ لَوْ حُجَّةَ فَاحْتِجْ بِهَا وَ لَا قَائِلَ لَمْ  
أَجْتَرِحْ وَ لَمْ أَعْمَلْ سُوءًا وَ مَا عَسَى الْجُحُودُ وَ لَوْ جَحَدْتُ يَا مَوْلَايَ يَنْفَعَنِي، كَيْفَ  
وَ أَنِّي ذَلِكَ، وَ جَوَارِحِي كُلُّهَا شَاهِدَةٌ عَلَيَّ بِمَا قَدْ عَمَلْتُ، وَ عَلِمْتُ يَقِينًا غَيْرَ ذِي  
شَكٍّ إِنَّكَ سَأَلْتَنِي مِنْ عِظَائِمِ الْأُمُورِ، وَ أَنَّكَ الْحَكَمُ الْعَدْلُ الَّذِي لَا تَجُورُ وَ عَدْلُكَ  
مُهْلِكِي، وَ مِنْ كُلِّ عَدْلِكَ مَهْرَبِي، فَإِنْ تُعَذِّبْنِي يَا إِلَهِي فَبِذُنُوبِي بَعْدَ حُجَّتِكَ عَلَيَّ وَ  
إِنْ تَعْفُ عَنِّي فَبِحِلْمِكَ وَ جُودِكَ وَ كَرَمِكَ. لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ  
الظَّالِمِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْمُسْتَغْفِرِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ  
سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْمُؤَحِّدِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ  
الْخَائِفِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْوَجِلِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ  
إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الرَّاجِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الرَّاغِبِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا  
أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْمُهْلَلِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ  
السَّائِلِينَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْمُسَبِّحِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ  
سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الْمُكَبِّرِينَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ رَبِّي وَ رَبُّ آبَائِي  
الْأَوَّلِينَ. اللَّهُمَّ هَذَا ثَنَائِي عَلَيْكَ مُمَجِّدًا وَ إِخْلَاصِي لِذِكْرِكَ مُوَحِّدًا وَ إِقْرَارِي بِأَلَائِكَ  
مُعَدِّدًا وَ إِنْ كُنْتُ مُقْرَأً أَنِّي لَمْ أَحْصِهَا لِكَثْرَتِهَا وَ سُبُوغِهَا وَ تَظَاهُرِهَا وَ تَقَادُمِهَا  
إِلَى حَادِثٍ مَا لَمْ تَزَلْ تَتَعَهَّدُنِي بِهِ مَعَهَا مِنْذُ خَلَقْتَنِي وَ بَرَأْتَنِي مِنْ أَوَّلِ الْعُمُرِ مِنْ

الْإِغْنَاءِ مِنَ الْفَقْرِ وَ كَشْفِ الضَّرِّ وَ تَسْبِيبِ الْيُسْرِ وَ دَفْعِ الْعُسْرِ وَ تَفْرِيجِ الْكَرْبِ  
 وَالْعَافِيَةِ فِي الْبَدَنِ وَالسَّلَامَةِ فِي الدِّينِ وَ لَوْ رَفَدَنِي عَلَى قَدْرِ ذِكْرِ نِعْمَتِكَ جَمِيعُ  
 الْعَالَمِينَ مِنَ الْأَوَّلِينَ وَ الْآخِرِينَ مَ قَدَّرْتُ وَ لَا هُمْ عَلَى ذَلِكَ، تَقَدَّسَتْ وَ تَعَالَيْتَ  
 مِنْ رَبِّ كَرِيمٍ عَظِيمٍ رَحِيمٍ، لَا تُحْصَى الْأَوْكُ وَ لَا يُبْلَغُ ثَنَاؤُكَ وَ لَ تَكْفَى  
 نِعْمَاؤُكَ، صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ أَتِمِّمْ عَلَيْنَا نِعْمَكَ وَ أَسْعِدْنَا بِطَاعَتِكَ  
 سُبْحَانَكَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ. اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّكَ تُجِيبُ الْمُضْطَرَّ وَ تَكْشِفُ السُّوءَ وَ تُغِيثُ  
 الْمَكْرُوبَ وَ تَشْفِي السَّقِيمَ وَ تُغْنِي الْفَقِيرَ وَ تَجْبِرُ الْكَسِيرَ وَ تَرْحَمُ الصَّغِيرَ وَ تُعِينُ  
 الْكَبِيرَ وَ لَيْسَ دُونَكَ ظَهِيرٌ وَ لَا فَوْقَكَ قَدِيرٌ وَأَنْتَ الْعَلِيُّ الْكَبِيرُ، يَا مُطْلِقَ الْمُكَبَّلِ  
 الْأَسِيرِ يَا رَازِقَ الطِّفْلِ الصَّغِيرِ يَا عِصْمَةَ الْخَائِفِ الْمُسْتَجِيرِ، يَا مَنْ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ  
 وَ لَا وَزِيرَ، صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَ أَعْطِنِي فِي هَذِهِ الْعَشِيَّةِ أَفْضَلَ مَا  
 أَعْطَيْتَ وَأَنْتَ أَحَدًا مِنْ عِبَادِكَ مِنْ نِعْمَةٍ تُؤَلِّمُهَا وَ الْإِثْمَ تُجَدِّدُهَا وَ بَلِيَّةَ تَصْرِفُهَا وَ  
 كُرْبَةَ تَكْشِفُهَا وَ دَعْوَةَ تَسْمَعُهَا وَ حَسَنَةَ تَقْبَلُهَا وَ سَيِّئَةَ تَتَغَمَّدُهَا، إِنَّكَ لَطِيفٌ بِمِ  
 تَشَاءُ خَبِيرٌ وَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ. اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّكَ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ دُعَايَ وَأَسْرَعُ مَنْ أَجَابَ  
 وَ أَكْرَمُ مَنْ عَفَى وَ أَوْسَعُ مَنْ أَعْطَى وَ أَسْمَعُ مَنْ سُئِلَ يَا رَحْمَنَ الدُّنْيَا وَ الْآخِرَةِ وَ  
 رَحِيمَهُمَا لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِكَ مَسْئُولٌ وَ لَا سِوَاكَ مَأْمُولٌ، دَعَوْتُكَ فَأَجَبْتَنِي وَ سَأَلْتُكَ  
 فَأَعْطَيْتَنِي وَ رَغِبْتُ إِلَيْكَ فَرَحِمْتَنِي وَ وَثِقْتُ بِكَ فَفَجَّيْتَنِي وَ فَرَعْتُ إِلَيْكَ  
 فَكَفَيْتَنِي. اللَّهُمَّ فَصَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ عَبْدِكَ وَ رَسُولِكَ وَ نَبِيِّكَ وَ عَلَى إِلِهِ الطَّيِّبِينَ  
 الطَّاهِرِينَ أَجْمَعِينَ، وَ تَمِّمْ لَنَا نِعْمَاتِكَ وَ هَبِّنْ عَطَائِكَ وَ اكْتُبْنَا لَكَ شَاكِرِينَ وَ  
 لَا لِأَنْكَ ذَاكِرِينَ آمِينَ آمِينَ رَبَّ الْعَالَمِينَ. اللَّهُمَّ يَا مَنْ مَلَكَ فَقْدَرَ، وَ قَدَرَ فَقَهَرَ،  
 وَ عُصِيَ فَسْتَرَ، وَ اسْتُغْفِرَ فَغَفَرَ، يَا غَايَةَ الطَّالِبِينَ الرَّاعِبِينَ، وَ مُنْتَهَى أَمَلِ  
 الرَّاجِينَ، يَا مَنْ أَحَاطَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عِلْمًا وَ وَسِعَ الْمُسْتَقِيلِينَ رَأْفَةً وَ رَحْمَةً وَ حِلْمًا.  
 اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّا نَتَوَجَّهُ إِلَيْكَ فِي هَذِهِ الْعَشِيَّةِ الَّتِي شَرَفْتَهَا وَ عَظَّمْتَهَا بِمُحَمَّدِ نَبِيِّكَ وَ  
 رَسُولِكَ وَ خَيْرَتِكَ مِنْ خَلْقِكَ وَ آمِينِكَ عَلَى وَحْيِكَ، الْبَشِيرِ النَّذِيرِ السِّرَاجِ  
 الْمُنِيرِ، الَّذِي أَنْعَمْتَ بِهِ عَلَى الْمُسْلِمِينَ وَ جَعَلْتَهُ رَحْمَةً لِلْعَالَمِينَ، اللَّهُمَّ فَصَلِّ  
 عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا مُحَمَّدٌ أَهْلٌ لِذَلِكَ مِنْكَ يَا عَظِيمُ فَصَلِّ عَلَيْهِ وَ عَلَى  
 إِلِهِ الْمُنتَجِبِينَ الطَّيِّبِينَ الطَّاهِرِينَ أَجْمَعِينَ، وَ تَعَمَّدْنَا بِعَفْوِكَ عَنَّا فَالْيَاكَ عَجَّتْ  
 الْأَصْوَاتُ بِصُنُوفِ اللُّغَاتِ، فَاجْعَلْ لَنَا اللَّهُمَّ فِي هَذِهِ الْعَشِيَّةِ نَصِيبًا مِنْ كُلِّ خَيْرٍ  
 تَقْسِمُهُ بَيْنَ عِبَادِكَ، وَ نُورَ تَهْدِي بِهِ وَ رَحْمَةً تَنْشُرُهَا وَ بَرَكَةَ تُنْزِلُهَا وَ عَافِيَةَ  
 تُجَلِّلُهَا وَ رِزْقَ تَبْسُطُهُ، يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ. اللَّهُمَّ اقْلِبْنَا فِي هَذَا الْوَقْتِ مُنْجِحِينَ  
 مُفْلِحِينَ مَبْرُورِينَ غَانِمِينَ وَ لَا تَجْعَلْنَا مِنَ الْقَانِطِينَ، وَ لَا تُخْلِنَا مِنْ رَحْمَتِكَ وَ ل

تَحْرِمُنَا مَا نُؤَمِّلُهُ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، وَ لَا تَجْعَلْنَا مِنْ رَحْمَتِكَ مَحْرُومِينَ، وَ لَا لِفَضْلِ مَا  
نُؤَمِّلُهُ مِنْ عَطَائِكَ قَانِطِينَ، وَ لَا تَرُدَّنَّ خَائِبِينَ، وَ لَا مِنْ بَابِكَ مَطْرُودِينَ، يَا أَجُودَ  
الْأَجُودِينَ وَ أَكْرَمَ الْأَكْرَمِينَ، إِلَيْكَ أَقْبَلْنَا مُوقِنِينَ وَ لِبَيْتِكَ الْحَرَامِ آمِينَ قَاصِدِينَ،  
فَاعِنَّا عَلَى مَا سَكِنَا وَ أَكْمِلْ لَنَا حَجَّنَا وَ اعْفُ عَنَّا وَ عَافِنَا، فَقَدْ مَدَدْنَا إِلَيْكَ أَيْدِيَنَا،  
فَهِيَ بِذِلَّةِ الْإِعْتِرَافِ مَوْسُومَةٌ، اللَّهُمَّ فَاعْطِنَا فِي هَذِهِ الْعَشِيَّةِ مَا سَأَلْنَاكَ، وَ اكْفِنَا  
مَا اسْتَكْفَيْنَاكَ فَلْ كَافِيَ لَنَا سِوَاكَ، وَ لَا رَبَّ لَنَا غَيْرُكَ، نَافِذٌ فِينَا حُكْمُكَ،  
مُحِيطٌ بِمَا عَلِمُكَ، عَدْلٌ فِينَا قَضَاؤُكَ، إِقْضِ لَنَا الْخَيْرَ وَ اجْعَلْنَا مِنْ أَهْلِ الْخَيْرِ،  
اللَّهُمَّ أَوْجِبْ لَنَا بِجُودِكَ عَظِيمَ الْأَجْرِ وَ كَرِيمَ الذُّخْرِ وَ دَوَامَ الْيُسْرِ، وَ اغْفِرْ لَنَا  
ذُنُوبَنَا أَجْمَعِينَ، وَ لَا تُهْلِكْنَا مَعَ الْهَالِكِينَ، وَ لَا تَصْرِفْ عَنَّا رَأْفَتَكَ وَ رَحْمَتَكَ يَا  
أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ. اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْنَا فِي هَذَا الْوَقْتِ مِمَّنْ سَأَلَكَ فَاعْطَيْتَهُ وَ شَكَرَكَ  
فَزِدْتَهُ وَ ثَابَ إِلَيْكَ فَاقْبَلْتَهُ، وَ تَنَصَّلَ إِلَيْكَ مِنْ ذُنُوبِهِ كُلِّهَا فَغَفَرْتَهَا لَهُ، يَا ذَا الْجَلَالِ  
وَ الْإِكْرَامِ اللَّهُمَّ وَ نَقِّنَا وَ سَدِّدْنَا وَ اعْصِمْنَا، وَ اقْبَلْ تَضَرُّعَنَا يَا خَيْرَ مَنْ سُئِلَ وَ يَا  
أَرْحَمَ مَنْ اسْتُرْحِمَ، يَا مَنْ لَ يَخْفَى عَلَيْهِ إِغْمَاضُ الْجُفُونِ وَ لَا لَحْظُ الْعُيُونِ، وَ لَا  
مَ اسْتَقَرَّ فِي الْمَكْنُونِ، وَ لَا مَا انْطَوَتْ عَلَيْهِ مُضْمَرَاتُ الْقُلُوبِ، الْأَكْلُ ذَلِكَ قَدْ  
أَحْصَاهُ عِلْمُكَ وَ وَسَعَهُ حِلْمُكَ، سُبْحَانَكَ وَ تَعَالَيْتَ عَمَّا يَقُولُ الظَّالِمُونَ عَلُوً  
كَبِيرًا، تُسَبِّحُ لَكَ السَّمَاوَاتُ السَّبْعُ وَ الْأَرْضُونَ وَ مَنْ فِيهِنَّ، وَ إِنْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ إِلَّا  
يُسَبِّحُ بِحَمْدِكَ، فَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ وَ الْمَجْدُ وَ عَلُوُّ الْجَدِّ، يَا ذَا الْجَلَالِ وَ الْإِكْرَامِ وَ الْفَضْلِ  
وَ الْإِنْعَامِ وَ الْإِيَادِي الْجِسَامِ، وَأَنْتَ الْجَوَادُ الْكَرِيمُ الرَّؤُفُ الرَّحِيمُ. اللَّهُمَّ أَوْسِعْ عَلَيَّ  
مِنْ رِزْقِكَ الْحَلَالِ وَ عَافِنِي فِي بَدَنِي وَ دِينِي وَ آمِنْ خَوْفِي وَ أَعْتِقْ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ.  
اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَمْكُرْ بِي وَ لَا تَسْتَدْرِجْنِي وَ لَا تَخْدَعْنِي وَ ادْرَأْ عَنِّي شَرَّ فَسَقَةِ الْجِنِّ وَ الْإِنْسِ

And then Imam Hussein (a.s.) raised his head and looked up to the heavens and said with a low voice and eyes full of tears:

يَا أَسْمَعَ السَّامِعِينَ، يَا أَبْصَرَ

النَّاطِرِينَ، وَ يَا أَسْرَعَ الْحَاسِبِينَ، وَ يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ، صَلَّى عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَ آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ السَّادَةِ الْمَيَامِينَ، وَ أَسْأَلُكَ اللَّهُمَّ حَاجَتِي الَّتِي  
إِنْ أَعْطَيْتَنِيهَا لَمْ يَضُرَّنِي مَا مَنَعْتَنِي، وَ إِنْ مَنَعْتَنِيهَا لَمْ يَنْفَعْنِي مَا أَعْطَيْتَنِي، أَسْأَلُكَ فَكَأَنَّ رَقَبَتِي مِنَ النَّارِ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ وَحْدَكَ



لاشريك لك، لك الملك و لك الحمد، و أنت على كل شيء قدير، يا رب يا رب

And repeated the sentence “يا رب” many times, and people who were around the holy Imam (as) listened to the prayer and said amen to that, and then they cried out with tears until the sunset and went to Mash'ar al-Haraam.

At this point, the prayer of Imam Hussein (a.s.) finishes according to the quoting of the late Kaf'ami; but Sayyed ibn Tawoos (a.r.) adds the following to that:

إلهي ان الفقير في غناي، فكيف لا أكون فقيراً في فقرى، إلهي ان الجاهل في علمي فكيف لا أكون جهولاً في جهلي. إلهي ان اختلاف تدبيرك و سرعة طواري مقاديرك منع عبادك العارفين بك عن السكون الى عطاء والياس منك في بلاء إلهي مني ما يليق بلؤمي و منك ما يليق بكرمك. إلهي وصفت نفسك باللطف والرافة لي قبل وجود ضعفي، أفتمنعني منهما بعد وجود ضعفي. إلهي ان ظهرت المحاسن مني فبفضلك و لك المنة علي، و ان ظهرت المساوي مني فبعد لك و لك الحجة علي، إلهي كيف تكلمت لي، و كيف أضام و أنت الناصر لي، أم كيف أخيب و أنت الحفي بي، ه ان أتوسل اليك بفقرى اليك و كيف أتوسل اليك بما هو محال ان يصل اليك، أم كيف أشكو اليك حالي و هو لا يخفي عليك، أم كيف أترجم بمقالتي و هو منك برز اليك، أم كيف تخيب آمالي و هي قد وفدت اليك، أم كيف لا تحسن احوالي و بك قامت. إلهي ما أطفك بي مع عظيم جهلي، و ما أرحمك بي مع قبيح فعلي، إلهي ما أقربك مني و أبعدني عنك، و م أرافك بي فما الذي يحجبني عنك، إلهي علمت باختلاف الآثار و تنقلات الأطوار ان مرادك مني ان تتعرف الي في كل شيء حتى لا أجهلك في شيء، إلهي كلما أخرسني لؤمي أنطقني بكرمك، و كلما أيسنتني أوصافي أطمعنتني منك، إلهي من كانت محاسنه مساوي، فكيف لا تكون مساويه مساوي، و من كانت حقائقه دعاوي، فكيف لا تكون دعاويه دعاوي، إلهي حكمك النافذ و مشيتك القاهرة لم يتركها لذي مقال مقالاً، و لا لذي حال حالاً. إلهي كم من طاعة بنيته و حالة سيدتها هدم اعتمادي عليها عدلك، بل أقالني منه فضلك، إلهي انك تعلم اني و ان لم تدم الطاعة مني فعلاً جزماً فقد دامت محبة و عزماً، إلهي كيف أعزم و أنت القاهر، و كيف لا أعزم و أنت الامر، إلهي ترددي في الآثار يوجب بعد المزار، فأجمعني عليك بخدمة

تُوصِلُنِي إِلَيْكَ، كَيْفَ يُسْتَدَلُّ عَلَيْكَ بِمِ هُوَ فِي وُجُودِهِ مُفْتَقِرٌ إِلَيْكَ، أَيْكُونُ لِغَيْرِكَ  
مِنَ الظُّهُورِ مَا لَيْسَ لَكَ حَتَّى يَكُونَ هُوَ الْمُظْهَرُ لَكَ، مَتَى غَبِتَ حَتَّى تَحْتَاجَ إِلَى  
دَلِيلٍ يَدُلُّ عَلَيْكَ، وَ مَتَى بَعُدْتَ حَتَّى تَكُونَ الْإِثَارُ هِيَ الَّتِي تُوصِلُ إِلَيْكَ، عَمِيَتْ  
عَيْنٌ لَا تَرَكَ عَلَيْهَا رَقِيبًا، وَ خَسِرَتْ صَفْقَةٌ عَبْدٌ لَمْ تَجْعَلْ لَهُ مِنْ حُبِّكَ نَصِيبًا.  
إِلَهِي أَمَرْتُ بِالرُّجُوعِ إِلَى الْإِثَارِ فَأَرْجِعْنِي إِلَيْكَ بِكِسْوَةِ الْأَنْوَارِ وَ هِدَايَةِ الْإِسْتَبْصَارِ  
حَتَّى أَرْجِعَ إِلَيْكَ مِنْهَا كَمَا دَخَلْتُ إِلَيْكَ مِنْهَا مَصُونٌ السِّرِّ عَنِ النَّظَرِ إِلَيْهَا، وَ  
مَرْفُوعَ الْهَمَّةِ عَنِ الْإِعْتِمَادِ عَلَيْهَا، إِنَّكَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ إِلَهِي هَذَا ذُلِّي ظَاهِرٌ  
بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ، وَ هَذَا حَالِي لَا يَخْفَى عَلَيْكَ، مِنْكَ أَطْلُبُ الْوُصُولَ إِلَيْكَ، وَبِكَ  
أَسْتَدَلُّ عَلَيْكَ، فَاهْدِنِي بِنُورِكَ إِلَيْكَ، وَ أَقْمِنِي بِصِدْقِ الْعُبُودِيَّةِ بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ. إِلَهِي  
عَلِّمْنِي مِنْ عِلْمِكَ الْمَخْزُونِ وَصَنِّي بِسِتْرِكَ الْمَصُونِ، إِلَهِي حَقِّقْنِي بِحَقَائِقِ أَهْلِ  
الْقُرْبِ وَاسْلُكْ بِي مَسْلَكَ أَهْلِ الْجَذْبِ. إِلَهِي أَغْنِنِي بِتَدْبِيرِكَ لِي عَنْ تَدْبِيرِي، وَ  
بِاخْتِيَارِكَ عَنْ إِخْتِيَارِي، وَ أَوْقِفْنِي عَنْ مَرَكَزِ اضْطِرَارِي. إِلَهِي أَخْرَجْنِي مِنْ ذُلِّ  
نَفْسِي وَ طَهَّرْنِي مِنْ شَكِّي وَ شِرْكِي قَبْلَ حُلُولِ رَمْسِي، بِكَ أَنْتَصِرُ فَأَنْصُرْنِي، وَ  
عَلَيْكَ أَتَوَكَّلُ فَلْ تَكَلْنِي، وَ إِيَّاكَ أَسْأَلُ فَلَا تُخَيِّبْنِي، وَ فِي فَضْلِكَ أَرْغَبُ فَلَا  
تَحْرِمْنِي، وَ بِجَنَابِكَ أَنْتَسِبُ فَلَا تُبْعِدْنِي، وَ بِبَابِكَ أَقْفُ فَلَا تَطْرُدْنِي، إِلَهِي تَقَدَّسَ  
رِضَاكَ أَنْ يَكُونَ لَهُ عِلَّةٌ مِنْكَ، فَكَيْفَ تَكُونُ لَهُ عِلَّةٌ مِنِّي. إِلَهِي أَنْتَ الْغَنِيُّ بِذَاتِكَ  
أَنْ يَصِلَ إِلَيْكَ النَّقْعُ مِنْكَ فَكَيْفَ لَ تَكُونَ غَنِيًّا عَنِّي، إِلَهِي إِنَّ الْقَضَاءَ وَالْقَدَرَ  
يَمْنِنِي، وَ إِنَّ الْهَوَى بَوَائِقِ الشَّهْوَةِ أَسْرَنِي، فَكُنْ أَنْتَ النَّصِيرَ لِي حَتَّى تَنْصُرْنِي وَ  
تُبْصِرْنِي، وَ أَغْنِنِي بِفَضْلِكَ حَتَّى أَسْتَغْنِيَ بِكَ عَنْ طَلْبِي. أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَشْرَقْتَ  
الْأَنْوَارَ فِي قُلُوبِ أَوْلِيَائِكَ حَتَّى عَرَفُوكَ وَ وَحَدُّوكَ، وَ أَنْتَ الَّذِي أَزَلْتَ الْأَغْيَارَ  
عَنْ قُلُوبِ أَحِبَّائِكَ حَتَّى لَمْ يُحِبُّوا سِوَاكَ وَ لَمْ يَلْجَأُوا إِلَى غَيْرِكَ، أَنْتَ الْمُونِسُ  
لَهُمْ حَيْثُ أَوْ حَشَتَهُمُ الْعَوَالِمُ، وَأَنْتَ الَّذِي هَدَيْتَهُمْ حَيْثُ اسْتَبَانَتْ لَهُمُ الْمَعَالِمُ،  
مَاذَا وَجَدَمَنْ فَقَدَكَ، وَ مَا الَّذِي فَقَدَ مَنْ وَجَدَكَ، لَقَدْ خَابَ مَنْ رَضِيَ دُونَكَ  
بَدَلًا، وَ لَقَدْ خَسِرَ مَنْ بَغَى عَنكَ مُتَحَوِّلاً، كَيْفَ يُرْجَى سِوَاكَ وَ أَنْتَ مَا قَطَعْتَ  
الْإِحْسَانَ، وَ كَيْفَ يُطَلَّبُ مِنْ غَيْرِكَ وَ أَنْتَ مِ بَدَلْتِ عَادَةَ الْإِمْتِنَانِ، يَا مَنْ أَذَاقَ  
أَحِبَّائَهُ حَلَاوَةَ الْمُؤَانَسَةِ فَقَامُوا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مُتَمَلِّقِينَ، وَ يَا مَنْ أَلْبَسَ أَوْلِيَائَهُ مَلَابِسَ  
هَيْبَتِهِ فَقَامُوا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مُسْتَغْفِرِينَ، أَنْتَ الذَّاكِرُ قَبْلَ الذَّاكِرِينَ وَ أَنْتَ الْبَادِي  
بِالْإِحْسَانِ قَبْلَ تَوَجُّهِ الْعَابِدِينَ، وَأَنْتَ الْجَوَادُ بِالْعَطَاءِ قَبْلَ طَلْبِ الطَّالِبِينَ، وَ أَنْتَ  
الْوَهَّابُ ثُمَّ لَمْ وَهَبْتَ لَنَا مِنَ الْمُسْتَقْرَضِينَ. إِلَهِي أَطْلُبْنِي بِرَحْمَتِكَ حَتَّى أَصِلَ  
إِلَيْكَ، وَاجْذِبْنِي بِمَنْكَ حَتَّى أَقْبَلَ عَلَيْكَ إِلَهِي إِنَّ رَجَائِي لَا يَنْقَطِعُ عَنكَ وَ إِنَّ

عَصَيْتُكَ كَمَا أَنَّ خَوْفِي لَا يُزَايِلُنِي وَإِنْ أَطَعْتُكَ، فَقَدْ دَفَعْتَنِي الْعَوَالِمُ إِلَيْكَ وَقَدْ  
أَوْقَعَنِي عِلْمِي بِكَرَمِكَ عَلَيْكَ، إِلَهِي كَيْفَ أَخِيْبُ وَأَنْتَ أَمَلِي، أَمْ كَيْفَ أَهَانُ وَ  
عَلَيْكَ مُتَّكِلِي، إِلَهِي كَيْفَ أَسْتَعِزُّ وَفِي الذَّلَّةِ أَرْكَزْتَنِي أَمْ كَيْفَ لَ أَسْتَعِزُّ وَإِلَيْكَ  
نَسَبْتَنِي، إِلَهِي كَيْفَ لَا أَفْتَقِرُ وَأَنْتَ الَّذِي فِي الْفُقَرَاءِ أَقَمْتَنِي، أَمْ كَيْفَ أَفْتَقِرُ وَأَنْتَ  
الَّذِي بِجُودِكَ أَغْنَيْتَنِي، وَأَنْتَ الَّذِي لَا إِلَهَ غَيْرُكَ تَعَرَّفْتَ لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ فَمَا جَهَلَكَ  
شَيْءٌ، وَأَنْتَ الَّذِي تَعَرَّفْتَ إِلَيَّ فِي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ فَارَأَيْتَكَ ظَاهِرًا فِي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ، وَأَنْتَ  
الظَّاهِرُ لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ، يَا مَنْ اسْتَوَى بِرَحْمَانِيَّتِهِ فَصَارَ الْعَرْشُ غَيْبًا فِي ذَاتِهِ، مَحَقَّتْ  
الْآثَارَ بِالْآثَارِ وَ مَحَوَّتْ الْأَغْيَارَ بِمُحِيطَاتِ أَفْلَاكِ الْأَنْوَارِ، يَا مَنْ احْتَجَبَ فِي  
سُرَادِقَاتِ عَرْشِهِ عَنِ أَنْ تُدْرِكَهُ الْأَبْصَارُ، يَا مَنْ تَجَلَّى بِكَمَالِ بَهَائِهِ فَتَحَقَّقَتْ  
عَظَمَتُهُ الْأَسْتِوَاءَ، كَيْفَ تَخْفَى وَأَنْتَ الظَّاهِرُ، أَمْ كَيْفَ تَغِيبُ وَأَنْتَ الرَّقِيبُ  
الْحَاضِرُ، إِنَّكَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ، وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ وَحْدَهُ

## Questions and Answers

Question 1– These days, all or an important part of meat of sacrifice is destroyed and buried under the ground, what is the duty of your followers?

Answer: It is not permitted to perform sacrifice in that place in these conditions. Hajjis should keep the money and perform sacrifice in the month of Dhu'l-Hijjah in a place that the meat will be consumed; I hope for the day that Muslims can perform sacrifice in Mena and bring the meat to another place that are consumed.

Question 2– If in the condition that has mentioned in the question 1, what is the duty of a person who performs sacrifice in Mena?

Answer: He/she should not suffice that and should perform another sacrifice in his/her hometown.

Question 3– If a Hajji doubts that the meat of sacrifice will be destroyed or not, then what is his/her duty?

Answer: According to the fact that others perform enough sacrifice, he/she should abstain from that and keep the money in order to perform sacrifice after returning to the hometown.

Question 4– Is research necessary to ascertain if meats will be consumed or not?

Answer: Research about this matter is not necessary in these conditions.

Question 5– How then should the acts of “after performing sacrifice” be performed?

Answer: It is enough to keep the money and performs other acts of Mena and come out of Ihram.

Question 6– The amount of money should be as much as the cost of sacrifice in his/her place or in Mecca?

Answer: The costs of sacrifice in his/her place.

Question 7– Is it possible that the Hajji can save money before departing for Hajj in his/her place, or order to keep the money on behalf of him/her, or order to sacrifice on that day for him/her?

Answer: All three solutions have no problem.

Question 8– If the Hajji arranges for performing sacrifice in his/her place in the day of Eid of Qurban, then it should be performed according to the date of his/her place or the date of Mecca?

Answer: The date of Mecca.

Question 9– Whenever a Hajji cannot perform sacrifice in the month of Dhu’l–Hijjah because of delay in return, then what should he/she do?

Answer: He/she should perform sacrifice in the month of Dhu’l–Hijjah of the next year.

Question 10– If a Hajji performs sacrifice after returning, is it possible to feed friends and family with that meat?

Answer: It is has no problem, but a group of poor people should be included in that.

Question 11– Those who were followers of previous Maraji’ (resources of religious rulings) and remain on their following according to your fatwa, can these people act according to your fatwa in this issue?

Answer: They should act according to our fatwa in all rituals in the first journey, and if it is not their first journey, then they can act according to Fatwas of those great scholars.

---

**Source URL:** <https://www.al-islam.org/rites-hajj-practical-treatise-and-rules-nasir-makarim-shirazi>

### Links

[1] <https://www.al-islam.org/user/login?destination=node/30490%23comment-form>

[2] <https://www.al-islam.org/user/register?destination=node/30490%23comment-form>

[3] <https://www.al-islam.org/person/ayatullah-naser-makarem-shirazi>

[4] <https://www.al-islam.org/person/bahador-shirazian>

[5] <https://www.al-islam.org/library/hajj-pilgrimage>

[6] <https://www.al-islam.org/feature/muslim-practices>